ETSI TS 138 101-5 V18.8.0 (2025-01)



5G; NR;

User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 5: Satellite access Radio Frequency (RF) and performance requirements (3GPP TS 38.101-5 version 18.8.0 Release 18)



Reference RTS/TSGR-0438101-5vi80 Keywords 5G

ETSI

650 Route des Lucioles F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - APE 7112B Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° w061004871

Important notice

The present document can be downloaded from the ETSI Search & Browse Standards application.

The present document may be made available in electronic versions and/or in print. The content of any electronic and/or print versions of the present document shall not be modified without the prior written authorization of ETSI. In case of any existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions and/or in print, the prevailing version of an ETSI deliverable is the one made publicly available in PDF format on ETSI deliver repository.

Users should be aware that the present document may be revised or have its status changed, this information is available in the Milestones listing.

If you find errors in the present document, please send your comments to the relevant service listed under <u>Committee Support Staff</u>.

If you find a security vulnerability in the present document, please report it through our Coordinated Vulnerability Disclosure (CVD) program.

Notice of disclaimer & limitation of liability

The information provided in the present deliverable is directed solely to professionals who have the appropriate degree of experience to understand and interpret its content in accordance with generally accepted engineering or other professional standard and applicable regulations.

No recommendation as to products and services or vendors is made or should be implied.

No representation or warranty is made that this deliverable is technically accurate or sufficient or conforms to any law and/or governmental rule and/or regulation and further, no representation or warranty is made of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose or against infringement of intellectual property rights.

In no event shall ETSI be held liable for loss of profits or any other incidental or consequential damages.

Any software contained in this deliverable is provided "AS IS" with no warranties, express or implied, including but not limited to, the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement of intellectual property rights and ETSI shall not be held liable in any event for any damages whatsoever (including, without limitation, damages for loss of profits, business interruption, loss of information, or any other pecuniary loss) arising out of or related to the use of or inability to use the software.

Copyright Notification

No part may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm except as authorized by written permission of ETSI.

The content of the PDF version shall not be modified without the written authorization of ETSI.

The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© ETSI 2025. All rights reserved.

Intellectual Property Rights

Essential patents

IPRs essential or potentially essential to normative deliverables may have been declared to ETSI. The declarations pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, are publicly available for ETSI members and non-members, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the ETSI IPR online database.

Pursuant to the ETSI Directives including the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation regarding the essentiality of IPRs, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

Trademarks

The present document may include trademarks and/or tradenames which are asserted and/or registered by their owners. ETSI claims no ownership of these except for any which are indicated as being the property of ETSI, and conveys no right to use or reproduce any trademark and/or tradename. Mention of those trademarks in the present document does not constitute an endorsement by ETSI of products, services or organizations associated with those trademarks.

DECTTM, **PLUGTESTS**TM, **UMTS**TM and the ETSI logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members. **3GPP**TM, **LTE**TM and **5G**TM logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners. **oneM2M**TM logo is a trademark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the oneM2M Partners. **GSM**[®] and the GSM logo are trademarks registered and owned by the GSM Association.

Legal Notice

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by ETSI 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The present document may refer to technical specifications or reports using their 3GPP identities. These shall be interpreted as being references to the corresponding ETSI deliverables.

The cross reference between 3GPP and ETSI identities can be found at 3GPP to ETSI numbering cross-referencing.

Modal verbs terminology

In the present document "shall", "shall not", "should", "should not", "may", "need not", "will", "will not", "can" and "cannot" are to be interpreted as described in clause 3.2 of the <u>ETSI Drafting Rules</u> (Verbal forms for the expression of provisions).

"must" and "must not" are NOT allowed in ETSI deliverables except when used in direct citation.

Contents

| Intelle | ectual Property Rights | 2 |
|---------|---|----|
| Legal | Notice | 2 |
| Moda | ıl verbs terminology | 2 |
| Forew | vord | 9 |
| 1 | Scope | 11 |
| 2 | References | |
| 3 | Definitions of terms, symbols and abbreviations | 12 |
| 3.1 | Terms | |
| 3.2 | Symbols | |
| 3.3 | Abbreviations | |
| 4 | General | 15 |
| 4.1 | Relationship between minimum requirements and test requirements | 15 |
| 4.2 | Applicability of minimum requirements | |
| 4.3 | Specification suffix information | 16 |
| 4.4 | Relationship with other core specifications | |
| 5 | Operating bands and channel arrangement | 16 |
| 5.1 | General | 16 |
| 5.2 | Operating bands | 16 |
| 5.2.1 | General | |
| 5.2.2 | Operating bands with conducted requirements | |
| 5.2.3 | Operating bands with radiated requirements | |
| 5.3 | UE channel bandwidth | |
| 5.3.1 | General | |
| | | |
| 5.3.2 | Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration | |
| 5.3.3 | Minimum guardband and transmission bandwidth configuration | |
| 5.3.4 | RB alignment | |
| 5.3.5 | UE channel bandwidth per operating band | |
| 5.3.6 | Asymmetric channel bandwidths | |
| 5.4 | Channel arrangement | |
| 5.4.1 | Channel spacing | |
| 5.4.1.1 | Channel spacing for adjacent NTN satellite carriers | 21 |
| 5.4.2 | Channel raster | 21 |
| 5.4.2.1 | NR-ARFCN and channel raster | 21 |
| 5.4.2.2 | 2 Channel raster to resource element mapping | 21 |
| 5.4.2.3 | | |
| 5.4.3 | Synchronization raster | |
| 5.4.3.1 | • | |
| 5.4.3.2 | | |
| 5.4.3.3 | | |
| 5.4.4 | TX-RX frequency separation | |
| 6 | Conducted transmitter characteristics | 24 |
| 6.1 | General | |
| 6.2 | Transmitter power | |
| 6.2.1 | UE maximum output power | |
| 6.2.2 | UE maximum output power reduction | |
| | | |
| 6.2.3 | UE additional maximum output power reduction | |
| 6.2.3.1 | | |
| 6.2.3.2 | | |
| 6.2.3.3 | | |
| 6.2.3.4 | | |
| 6.2.4 | Configured transmitted power | |
| 6.3 | Output power dynamics | 28 |

| 6.3.1 | Minimum output power | 28 |
|-----------|---|----|
| 6.3.2 | Transmit OFF power | |
| 6.3.3 | Transmit ON/OFF time mask | |
| 6.3.4 | Power control | |
| 6.4 | Transmit signal quality | |
| 6.4.1 | Frequency error | |
| 6.4.2 | Transmit modulation quality | |
| 6.4.2.1 | General | |
| 6.4.2.2 | Phase continuity requirements for DMRS bundling | |
| 6.5 | Output RF spectrum emissions | |
| 6.5.1 | Occupied bandwidth | |
| 6.5.2 | Out of band emission | |
| 6.5.2.1 | General | |
| 6.5.2.2 | Spectrum emission mask | |
| 6.5.2.3 | Additional spectrum emission mask | |
| | | |
| 6.5.2.3.1 | Requirements for network signalling value "NS_04N" | |
| 6.5.2.3.2 | Requirements for network signalling value "NS_05N" | |
| 6.5.2.4 | Adjacent channel leakage ratio | |
| 6.5.2.4.1 | NR ACLR | |
| 6.5.2.4.2 | UTRA ACLR | |
| 6.5.3 | Spurious emission | |
| 6.5.3.1 | General spurious emissions | |
| 6.5.3.2 | Spurious emissions for UE co-existence | |
| 6.5.3.3 | Additional spurious emissions | |
| 6.5.3.3.1 | General | |
| 6.5.3.3.2 | Requirement for network signalling value "NS_02N" | |
| 6.5.3.3.3 | Requirement for network signalling value "NS_03N" | |
| 6.5.3.3.4 | Requirement for network signalling value "NS_04N" and "NS_05N" | |
| 6.5.4 | Transmit intermodulation | 35 |
| 7 C | onducted receiver characteristics | 24 |
| | | |
| 7.1 | General | |
| 7.2 | Diversity characteristics | |
| 7.3 | Reference sensitivity | |
| 7.3.1 | General | |
| 7.3.2 | Reference sensitivity power level | |
| 7.4 | Maximum input level | |
| 7.5 | Adjacent channel selectivity | |
| 7.6 | Blocking characteristics | |
| 7.6.1 | General | 39 |
| 7.6.2 | In-band blocking | |
| 7.6.3 | Out-of-band blocking | 40 |
| 7.6.4 | Narrow band blocking | 41 |
| 7.7 | Spurious response | 42 |
| 7.8 | Intermodulation characteristics | 42 |
| 7.9 | Spurious emissions | 43 |
| 0 0- | | 40 |
| | onducted performance requirements | |
| 8.1 | General | |
| 8.1.1 | Relationship between minimum requirements and test requirements | |
| 8.1.2 | Applicability of minimum requirements | |
| 8.1.3 | Conducted requirements | |
| 8.1.3.1 | Introduction | 43 |
| 8.1.3.2 | Reference point | |
| 8.1.3.3 | SNR definition | 44 |
| 8.1.3.4 | Noc | 44 |
| 8.1.3.4.1 | Introduction | 44 |
| 8.1.3.4.2 | Noc for NR operating bands in FR1 | |
| 8.2 | Demodulation performance requirements | |
| 8.2.1 | General | |
| 8.2.1.1 | Applicability of requirements | |
| 8.2.1.1.1 | General | |
| | | |

| 8.2.1.1.2 | Applicability of requirements for optional UE features | 45 |
|------------|--|------------|
| 8.2.1.2 | PDSCH demodulation requirements | 45 |
| 8.2.1.2.1 | 1RX requirements | 48 |
| 8.2.1.2.2 | 2RX requirements | 48 |
| 8.2.1.2.2. | 1.1 Minimum requirements for PDSCH Mapping Type A | 48 |
| 8.3 | CSI reporting requirements | 50 |
| 0 D | | ~ (|
| | adiated transmitter characteristics | |
| 9.1 | General | |
| 9.2 | Transmitter power | |
| 9.2.1 | NTN VSAT maximum output power | |
| 9.2.1.0 | General | |
| 9.2.1.1 | Minimum requirements for Fixed VSAT | |
| 9.2.1.2 | Minimum requirements for Mobile VSAT | |
| 9.2.2 | Off-axis EIRP emission density limit within the operating band | |
| 9.2.2.1 | General | |
| 9.2.2.2 | Minimum requirement for bands n510 and n511 | |
| 9.2.2.3 | Minimum requirement for band n512 | |
| 9.2.2.3.1 | Fixed VSAT | |
| 9.2.2.3.2 | Mobile VSAT | |
| 9.2.2.3.3 | Additional Off-axis EIRP density requirements for protection of fixed services | |
| 9.2.3 | Configured transmitted power | |
| 9.3 | Output power dynamics | |
| 9.3.1 | Minimum output power | |
| 9.3.2 | Transmit OFF power | |
| 9.3.2.1 | General | |
| 9.3.3 | Transmit ON/OFF time mask | |
| 9.3.3.1 | General | |
| 9.3.3.2 | General ON/OFF time mask | |
| 9.3.3.3 | Transmit power time mask for slot and short or long subslot boundaries | |
| 9.3.3.4 | PRACH time mask | |
| 9.3.3.5 | Void | |
| 9.3.3.6 | SRS time mask | |
| 9.3.3.7 | PUSCH-PUCCH and PUSCH-SRS time masks | 59 |
| 9.3.3.8 | Transmit power time mask for consecutive slot or long subslot transmission and short subslot | |
| | transmission boundaries | |
| 9.3.3.9 | Transmit power time mask for consecutive short subslot transmissions boundaries | |
| 9.3.4 | Power control | |
| 9.3.4.1 | General | |
| 9.4 | Transmitter signal quality | |
| 9.4.1 | Frequency Error | |
| 9.4.2 | Transmit modulation quality | |
| 9.4.2.1 | General | |
| 9.4.2.2 | Error vector magnitude | |
| 9.5 | Output RF spectrum emissions | |
| 9.5.1 | Occupied bandwidth | |
| 9.5.2 | Out of Band Emissions | |
| 9.5.2.1 | General | |
| 9.5.2.2 | Spectrum emission mask | |
| 9.5.2.2.1 | General NR spectrum emission mask | |
| 9.5.2.2.2 | Additional spectrum emission mask | |
| 9.5.2.3 | Adjacent channel leakage ratio | |
| 9.5.3 | Spurious Emissions | |
| 9.5.3.1 | General | |
| 9.5.3.2 | On-axis spurious requirement | |
| 9.5.3.2.1 | Applicability | |
| 9.5.3.2.2 | "Emissions disabled" and "Carrier-off" states | |
| 9.5.3.2.3 | "Carrier-on" state | |
| 9.5.3.3 | Off-axis spurious requirement | |
| 9.5.3.3.1 | Applicability | |
| 9.5.3.3.2 | General "Emissions disabled" state | |
| 77111 | Emissions disabled state | 66 |

| 9.5.3.3. | | |
|----------------------|--|----|
| 9.6 | Antenna pointing accuracy and performance | |
| 9.6.1 | Antenna pointing accuracy | |
| 9.6.1.1 | Minimum requirements for NTN VSAT | |
| 9.6.1.1. | 11 2 | |
| 9.6.1.1. | \mathcal{C} | |
| 9.6.1.1. | 1 | |
| 9.6.1.2 | 1 71 | |
| 9.6.1.2. | 11 - | |
| 9.6.1.2. | | |
| 9.6.1.2. | | |
| 9.6.1.2. | | |
| 9.6.2 9.7 | Antenna performance | 00 |
| 9.7 9.7.1 | General | |
| 7.7.1 | Otheral | 05 |
| 10 | Radiated receiver characteristics | 70 |
| 10.1 | General | 70 |
| 10.2 | Polarization characteristics | 70 |
| 10.3 | OTA reference sensitivity level | |
| 10.3.1 | General | |
| 10.3.2 | Minimum requirement | |
| 10.4 | Maximum input level | |
| 10.4.1 | General | |
| 10.4.2 | Minimum requirement for Mobile VSAT | |
| 10.4.3 | Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT | |
| 10.5 | Adjacent channel selectivity | |
| 10.5.1 | Minimum requirement for Mobile VSAT | |
| 10.5.2 | Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT | |
| 10.6 10.6.1 | Blocking characteristics | |
| 10.6.1 | General Minimum requirement for Mobile VSAT | |
| 10.6.2 | Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT | |
| 10.0.5 | Spurious emissions emissio | |
| 10.7 | Receiver antenna off-axis performance | |
| | • | |
| | Demodulation performance requirements (Radiated requirements) | |
| 11.1 | General | |
| 11.1.2 | Applicability of minimum requirements | |
| 11.1.3 | Radiated requirements | |
| 11.1.3.1 | | |
| 11.1.3.2 | F | |
| 11.1.3.3 | | |
| 11.1.3.4 11.1.3.4 | | |
| 11.1.3.4 | | |
| 11.1.3.2 | Demodulation performance requirements | |
| 11.2.1 | General | |
| 11.2.1. | | |
| 11.2.1.1 | ** * * | |
| 11.2.1.1 | | |
| 11.2.2 | PDSCH demodulation requirements | |
| 11.2.2.1 | • | |
| 11.2.2.1 | • | |
| 11.2.3 | PDCCH demodulation requirements | |
| 11.2.3.1 | • | |
| 11.2.3.1 | | |
| Annex | X A (normative): Measurement channels | |
| | General | |
| A.1 (| | |

| A.2 | UL reference measurement channels | |
|--------|--|-----|
| A.2.1 | | |
| A.2.2 | | |
| A.2.2. | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | |
| A.2.2. | | |
| A.2.3 | | |
| A.2.3. | | |
| A.2.3. | · · | |
| A.2.3. | · · | |
| A.2.3. | · · | |
| A.2.3. | | |
| A.2.3. | | |
| A.2.3. | .7 CP-OFDM 64QAM | 102 |
| A.3 | DL reference measurement channels | 102 |
| A.3.1 | | |
| A.3.2 | | |
| A.3.2. | | |
| A.3.3 | | |
| A.3.3. | 1 | |
| A.3.3. | | |
| | | |
| A.4 | Testing related to Satellite Access | |
| A.4.1 | General | |
| A.4.2 | | |
| A.4.3 | | |
| A.4.4 | Test condition for performance requirements | 114 |
| A.5 | OFDMA Channel Noise Generator (OCNG) | 114 |
| A.5.1 | | |
| A.5.1. | | |
| | | |
| Anne | ex B (normative): Propagation conditions | 115 |
| B.1 | Static propagation condition | 115 |
| B.1.1 | UE Receiver with 1Rx | |
| B.1.2 | | |
| B.2.1 | Delay profiles | |
| B.2.2 | | |
| B.2.3 | | |
| B.2.3. | | 116 |
| B.2.3. | | |
| B.2.3. | | |
| Anne | ex C (normative): Downlink physical channels | |
| C.1 | General | |
| | | |
| C.2 | Setup (Conducted) | |
| C.3 | Connection (Conducted) | 118 |
| C.3.1 | Measurement of Performance requirements | 118 |
| C A | Satur (Padiatad) | 110 |

| C.5 | Connection (Radiated | d) | 119 |
|-------|----------------------|--------------------------------|-----|
| C.5.1 | Measurement of Re | ceiver Characteristics | 119 |
| Anne | ex D (informative): | Void | 121 |
| Anne | ex E (normative): | Environmental conditions | 122 |
| E.1 | General | | 122 |
| E.2 | Environmental (Cond | ducted) | 122 |
| E.2.1 | Temperature | | 122 |
| E.2.2 | Voltage | | 122 |
| E.2.3 | Vibration | | 123 |
| Anne | ex F (informative): | Antenna modelling for NTN VSAT | 124 |
| Anne | ex G (informative): | Change history | 125 |
| Histo | ry | | 128 |

Foreword

This Technical Specification has been produced by the 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
 - 1 presented to TSG for information;
 - 2 presented to TSG for approval;
 - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

In the present document, modal verbs have the following meanings:

shall indicates a mandatory requirement to do somethingshall not indicates an interdiction (prohibition) to do something

The constructions "shall" and "shall not" are confined to the context of normative provisions, and do not appear in Technical Reports.

The constructions "must" and "must not" are not used as substitutes for "shall" and "shall not". Their use is avoided insofar as possible, and they are not used in a normative context except in a direct citation from an external, referenced, non-3GPP document, or so as to maintain continuity of style when extending or modifying the provisions of such a referenced document.

should indicates a recommendation to do something

should not indicates a recommendation not to do something

may indicates permission to do something

need not indicates permission not to do something

The construction "may not" is ambiguous and is not used in normative elements. The unambiguous constructions "might not" or "shall not" are used instead, depending upon the meaning intended.

can indicates that something is possiblecannot indicates that something is impossible

The constructions "can" and "cannot" are not substitutes for "may" and "need not".

will indicates that something is certain or expected to happen as a result of action taken by an agency

the behaviour of which is outside the scope of the present document

will not indicates that something is certain or expected not to happen as a result of action taken by an

agency the behaviour of which is outside the scope of the present document

might indicates a likelihood that something will happen as a result of action taken by some agency the

behaviour of which is outside the scope of the present document

might not indicates a likelihood that something will not happen as a result of action taken by some agency

the behaviour of which is outside the scope of the present document

In addition:

is (or any other verb in the indicative mood) indicates a statement of fact

is not (or any other negative verb in the indicative mood) indicates a statement of fact

The constructions "is" and "is not" do not indicate requirements.

1 Scope

The present document establishes the minimum RF and performance requirements for NR User Equipment (UE) supporting satellite access operation.

The Mobile VSAT communicating with non-GSO is not considered in this release.

2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.
- [1] 3GPP TR 21.905: "Vocabulary for 3GPP Specifications". 3GPP TS 38.521-5: "NR; User Equipment (UE) conformance specification; Radio transmission [2] and reception; Part 5: Satellite access Radio Frequency (RF) and performance requirements". [3] Recommendation ITU-R M.1545: "Measurement uncertainty as it applies to test limits for the terrestrial component of International Mobile Telecommunications-2000". 3GPP TS 38.108: "NR; Satellite Node radio transmission and reception" [4] 3GPP TS 38.101-1: "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 1: Range 1 [5] Standalone". [6] 3GPP TS 38.101-4: "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 4: Performance requirements". [7] 3GPP TS 38.213: "NR; Physical layer procedures for control" 3GPP TS 38.331: "Radio Resource Control (RRC) protocol specification". [8] [9] 3GPP TS 38.300: "NR; NR and NG-RAN Overall description; Stage-2". 3GPP TS 36.101: "Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA); User Equipment (UE) [10] radio transmission and reception".
- [11] 3GPP TS 38.306: "User Equipment (UE) radio access capabilities".
- [12] 3GPP TR 38.811: "Study on New Radio (NR) to support non-terrestrial networks".
- [13] 3GPP TS 38.508-1: "5GS; User Equipment (UE) conformance specification; Part 1: Common test environment".
- [14] 3GPP TS 38.214: "NR; Physical layer procedures for data".
- [15] 3GPP TS 38.101-2: "NR; User Equipment (UE) radio transmission and reception; Part 2: Range 2 Standalone".
- [16] Recommendation ITU-R SM.329-12, "Unwanted emissions in the spurious domain".

| [17] | EN 303 978, Satellite Earth Stations and Systems (SES); Harmonised Standard for Earth Stations |
|------|--|
| | on Mobile Platforms (ESOMP) transmitting towards satellites in geostationary orbit, operating in |
| | the 27,5 GHz to 30,0 GHz frequency bands covering the essential requirements of article 3.2 of the |
| | Directive 2014/53/EU, v2.1.2, 2016-10. |

- [18] EN 301 459, Satellite Earth Stations and Systems (SES); Harmonised Standard for Satellite Interactive Terminals (SIT) and Satellite User Terminals (SUT) transmitting towards satellites in geostationary orbit, operating in the 29,5 GHz to 30,0 GHz frequency bands covering the essential requirements of article 3.2 of the Directive 2014/53/EU, v2.1.1, 2016-05.
- [19] IEEE Std 149: "IEEE Standard Test Procedures for Antennas", IEEE.

3 Definitions of terms, symbols and abbreviations

3.1 Terms

For the purposes of the present document, the terms given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. A term defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same term, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

"Carrier-off" state: radio state in which the NTN VSAT may transmit but does not transmit any carrier.

NOTE: "NTN VSAT may transmit" means that all the conditions for transmission are satisfied (e.g. in a state where transmissions are permitted, no failure detected, and the NTN VSAT is correctly pointed towards the satellite).

NOTE: The existence of a "Carrier-off" radio state depends on the system of transmission used. For NTN VSATs designed for continuous transmission mode there may be no "Carrier-off" state.

"Carrier-on" state: Radio state in which the NTN VSAT may transmit and transmits a carrier.

Co-polarized transmission: when the DUT transmission antenna polarization is aligned with test antenna polarization.

Cross-polarized transmission: when the DUT transmission antenna polarization is such with respect to the test antenna polarization that an incident wave from the DUT transmission antenna results in lowest available power at the test antenna.

"Emissions disabled" state: Radio state in which the Mobile VSAT is not emitting (e.g. before system monitoring pass, before the control channel is received, when a failure is detected, when a Mobile VSAT is commanded to disable, and when the Mobile VSAT is in a location requiring cessation of emissions).

Enhanced channel raster: channel raster with a 10 kHz granularity in bands with a 100 kHz channel raster.

Feeder link: A radio link from an earth station at a given location to a space station, or vice versa, conveying information for a space radiocommunication service other than for the fixed-satellite service. The given location may be at a specified fixed point, or at any fixed point within specified areas.

Fixed Satellite Service: A radiocommunication service between earth stations at given positions, when one or more satellites are used; the given position may be a specified fixed point or any fixed point within specified areas; in some cases this service includes satellite-to-satellite links, which may also be operated in the inter-satellite service; the fixed-satellite service may also include feeder links for other space radiocommunication services.

Fixed VSAT: VSAT used in FSS system at given position; the given position may be a specified fixed point or any fixed point within specified areas.

NOTE: Mobile VSAT is excluded from this definition.

Geostationary satellite: A geosynchronous satellite whose circular and direct orbit lies in the plane of the Earth's equator and which thus remains fixed relative to the Earth; by extension, a geosynchronous satellite which remains approximately fixed relative to the Earth.

Geostationary-Satellite Orbit: The orbit of a geosynchronous satellite whose circular and direct orbit lies in the plane of the Earth's equator.

Geosynchronous Earth Orbit: Earth-centered orbit at approximately 35786 kilometres above Earth's surface and synchronised with Earth's rotation. A geostationary orbit is a non-inclined geosynchronous orbit, i.e. in the Earth's equator plane.

Geosynchronous satellite: An earth satellite whose period of revolution is equal to the period of rotation of the Earth about its axis.

Low Earth Orbit: Orbit around the Earth with an altitude between 300 km, and 1500 km.

Mobile VSAT: VSAT on moving platform, and which can be further declined in three types: airborne, maritime or land based.

NOTE: Mobile VSAT can be also referred to as ESIM or ESOMP.

Non-terrestrial networks: Networks, or segments of networks, using an airborne or space-borne vehicle to embark a transmission equipment relay node or SAN.

NTN VSAT: a UE operating in FR2-NTN which could be a Fixed VSAT or a Mobile VSAT.

Plane perpendicular to the GSO arc: The plane that is perpendicular to the "plane tangent to the GSO arc," as defined below, and includes a line between the <u>earth station</u> in question and the GSO <u>space station</u> that it is communicating with (FCC 47 CFR 25.103).

Plane tangent to the GSO arc: The plane defined by the location of an <u>earth station</u>'s transmitting antenna and a line in the equatorial plane that is tangent to the GSO arc at the location of the GSO <u>space station</u> that the <u>earth station</u> is communicating with (FCC 47 CFR 25.103).

Satellite: A space-borne vehicle embarking a transparent payload, or a regenerative payload telecommunication transmitter, placed into Low-Earth Orbit (LEO), Medium-Earth Orbit (MEO), or Geostationary Earth Orbit (GEO).

Satellite Access Node: node providing NR user plane and control plane protocol terminations towards NTN satellite capable UE, and connected via the NG interface to the 5GC. It encompasses a transparent payload on board a NTN platform, with satellite-gateway and gNB functions.

UE transmission bandwidth configuration: Set of resource blocks located within the UE channel bandwidth which may be used for transmitting or receiving by the UE.

3.2 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document, the following symbols apply:

 ΔF_{Global} Granularity of the global frequency raster ΔF_{Raster} Band dependent channel raster granularity

 $\begin{array}{ll} BW_{Channel} & Channel \ bandwidth \\ BW_{interferer} & Bandwidth \ of \ the \ interferer \end{array}$

 $\begin{array}{ll} F_{DL_low} & \text{The lowest frequency of the downlink } \textit{operating band} \\ F_{DL_high} & \text{The highest frequency of the downlink } \textit{operating band} \\ F_{UL_low} & \text{The lowest frequency of the uplink } \textit{operating band} \\ F_{UL_high} & \text{The highest frequency of the uplink } \textit{operating band} \\ \end{array}$

F_{Interferer} Frequency of the interferer

 $F_{Interferer}$ (offset) Frequency offset of the interferer (between the center frequency of the interferer and the carrier

frequency of the carrier measured)

F_{loffset} Frequency offset of the interferer (between the center frequency of the interferer and the closest

edge of the carrier measured)

F_{OOB} The boundary between the NR out of band emission and spurious emission domains

 $\begin{array}{ll} F_{REF} & RF \ reference \ frequency \\ F_{REF\text{-}Offs} & Offset \ used \ for \ calculating \ F_{REF} \end{array}$

F_{uw} (offset) The frequency separation of the center frequency of the carrier closest to the interferer and the

center frequency of the interferer

N_{RB} Transmission bandwidth configuration, expressed in units of resource blocks

NR Absolute Radio Frequency Channel Number (NR-ARFCN)

 $N_{REF\text{-}Offs}$ Offset used for calculating N_{REF} $P_{Interferer}$ Modulated mean power of the interferer

P_{UEType} Minimum UE type peak EIPR (i.e. no tolerance) as specified in sub-clause 9.2.1

P_{uw} Power of an unwanted DL signal

θ Angle in degrees from a line from the <u>earth station</u> antenna to the assigned orbital location of the

target satellite

TRP_{max} The maximum TRP for the NTN VSAT as specified in sub-clause 9.2.1

3.3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the abbreviations given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. An abbreviation defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same abbreviation, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

ACLR Adjacent Channel Leakage Ratio ACS Adjacent Channel Selectivity

A-MPR Additional Maximum Power Reduction

BW Bandwidth
BWP Bandwidth Part
CP-OFDM Cyclic Prefix-OFDM
CW Continuous Wave

DFT-s-OFDM Discrete Fourier Transform-spread-OFDM

DM-RS Demodulation Reference Signal DTX Discontinuous Transmission

EIRP Equivalent Isotropically Radiated Power

ESIM Earth Station in Motion

ESOMP Earth Stations on Mobile Platforms

EVM Error Vector Magnitude FR Frequency Range

FRC Fixed Reference Channel FSS Fixed Satellite Service GEO Geosynchronous Earth Orbit

GSCN Global Synchronization Channel Number

GSO Geostationary-Satellite Orbit

IBB In-band Blocking

ITU-R Radiocommunication Sector of the International Telecommunication Union

LEO Low Earth Orbiting

MBW Measurement bandwidth defined for the protected band

MOP Maximum Output Power

MPR Allowed maximum power reduction
MSD Maximum Sensitivity Degradation
NGEO Non-Geostationary Earth Orbiting
NGSO Non-Geostationary-Satellite Orbit

NR New Radio

NR-ARFCN NR Absolute Radio Frequency Channel Number

NS Network Signalling NTN Non-Terrestrial Network

OCNG OFDMA Channel Noise Generator

OOB Out-of-band

PRB Physical Resource Block

QAM Quadrature Amplitude Modulation

RAN Radio Access Network
RE Resource Element
REFSENS REFerence SENSitivity
RF Radio Frequency

RMS Root Mean Square (value)
RSRP Reference Signal Receive Power
RSRQ Reference Signal Receive Quality

RX Receiver

SAN Satellite Access Node SC Single Carrier

| SCS | Subcarrier spacing |
|------|------------------------------|
| SEM | Spectrum Emission Mask |
| SNR | Signal-to-Noise Ratio |
| SRS | Sounding Reference Symbol |
| SS | Synchronization Symbol |
| TN | Terrestrial Network |
| TX | Transmitter |
| TxD | Tx Diversity |
| UE | User Equipment |
| VSAT | Very Small Aperture Terminal |

4 General

4.1 Relationship between minimum requirements and test requirements

The present document is a Single-RAT specification for satellite NR UE, covering RF characteristics and minimum performance requirements. Conformance to the present specification is demonstrated by fulfilling the test requirements specified in the conformance specification 3GPP TS 38.521-5 [2].

The Minimum Requirements given in this specification make no allowance for measurement uncertainty. The test specification 3GPP TS 38.521-5 [2] defines test tolerances. These test tolerances are individually calculated for each test. The test tolerances are used to relax the minimum requirements in this specification to create test requirements. For some requirements, including regulatory requirements, the test tolerance is set to zero.

The measurement results returned by the test system are compared - without any modification - against the test requirements as defined by the shared risk principle.

The shared risk principle is defined in Recommendation ITU-R M.1545 [3].

4.2 Applicability of minimum requirements

- a) In this specification the Minimum Requirements are specified as general requirements and additional requirements. Where the Requirement is specified as a general requirement, the requirement is mandated to be met in all scenarios
- b) For specific scenarios for which an additional requirement is specified, in addition to meeting the general requirement, the UE is mandated to meet the additional requirements.
- c) The spurious emissions power requirements are for the long-term average of the power. For the purpose of reducing measurement uncertainty, it is acceptable to average the measured power over a period of time sufficient to reduce the uncertainty due to the statistical nature of the signal.
- d) In table 4.2-1, the requirement applicability for the NR NTN bands in each NTN frequency range (as specified in Table 5.1-1) is defined. For each requirement, the applicable requirement clause in the specification is identified. Requirements not included in a requirement set is marked not applicable (NA).

Requirement set Requirement FR1-NTN bands FR2-NTN bands Conducted transmitter characteristics Clause 6 NA Clause 7 NA Conducted receiver characteristics Conducted performance requirements Clause 8 NA Radiated transmitter characteristics NA Clause 9 NA Clause 10 Radiated receiver characteristics Demodulation performance requirements NA Clause 11 (Radiated requirements)

Table 4.2-1: Requirement set applicability

4.3 Specification suffix information

Specification suffix information is not defined for the time being in this release of specification.

4.4 Relationship with other core specifications

The present document establishes the minimum RF and performance requirements for NR User Equipment (UE) operating in a Non-Terrestrial Network. The present document for the single-RAT specification of a satellite NR UE side is used together with the technical specification 3GPP TS 38.108 [4] specifying the Satellite Access Node (SAN).

5 Operating bands and channel arrangement

5.1 General

The channel arrangements presented in this clause are based on the operating bands and channel bandwidths defined in the present Release of specifications.

NOTE: Other operating bands and channel bandwidths may be considered in future Releases.

Requirements throughout the RF specifications are in many cases defined separately for different frequency ranges (FR). The frequency ranges in which NTN satellite can operate according to this version of the specification are identified as described in Table 5.1-1.

Table 5.1-1: Definition of NTN frequency ranges

| Frequency range designation | Corresponding frequency range | | |
|---|-------------------------------|--|--|
| FR1-NTN (Note 1) | 410 MHz – 7125 MHz | | |
| FR2-NTN (Note 2) | 17300 MHz – 30000 MHz | | |
| NOTE 1: NTN bands within this frequency range are regarded as a FR1 band when references from other specifications. | | | |
| NOTE 2: NTN bands within this frequency range are regarded as a FR2 band when references from other specifications. | | | |

5.2 Operating bands

5.2.1 General

NTN satellite covers FR1-NTN and FR2-NTN operating bands in the present specification.

5.2.2 Operating bands with conducted requirements

NTN satellite is designed to operate in the operating bands defined in Table 5.2.2-1.

Table 5.2.2-1: NTN satellite bands in FR1-NTN

| NTN satellite operating band | Uplink (UL) operating band Satellite Access Node receive / UE transmit FUL,low – FUL,high | Downlink (DL) operating band Satellite Access Node transmit / UE receive F _{DL,low} – F _{DL,high} | Duplex mode |
|---|--|--|----------------|
| n256 | 1980 MHz – 2010 MHz | 2170 MHz – 2200 MHz | |
| n255 | 1626.5 MHz – 1660.5 MHz | 1525 MHz – 1559 MHz | FDD |
| n254 | 1610 – 1626.5 MHz | 2483.5 – 2500 MHz | FDD |
| NOTE: NTN satellite bands are numbered in descending order from n256. | | | |

5.2.3 Operating bands with radiated requirements

NTN satellite is designed to operate in the operating bands defined in Table 5.2.3-1.

Table 5.2.3-1: Satellite operating bands in FR2-NTN

| Satellite operating band | Uplink (UL) operating band SAN receive / UE transmit Ful,low - Ful,high | Downlink (DL) operating band SAN transmit / UE receive FDL,low - FDL,high | Duplex mode | | |
|--|---|---|----------------|--|--|
| n512(Note 1) | 27500 MHz - 30000 MHz | 17300 MHz - 20200 MHz | FDD | | |
| n511(Note 2) | 28350 MHz - 30000 MHz | 17300 MHz - 20200 MHz | FDD | | |
| n510(Note 3) | 27500 MHz - 28350 MHz | 17300 MHz - 20200 MHz | FDD | | |
| NOTE 1: This band is applicable in the countries subject to or referring to CEPT ECC | | | | | |

NOTE 1: This band is applicable in the countries subject to or referring to CEPT ECC Decision(05)01 and ECC Decision (13)01.

NOTE 2: This band is applicable in the countries subject to or referring to FCC 47 CFR part 25.

NOTE 3: This band is applicable for Earth Station operations in the USA subject to FCC 47 CFR part 25. FCC rules currently do not include ESIM operations in this band (47 CFR 25.202).

5.3 UE channel bandwidth

5.3.1 General

The UE channel bandwidth supports a single RF carrier in the uplink or downlink at the UE. From a SAN perspective, different UE channel bandwidths may be supported within the same spectrum for transmitting to and receiving from UEs connected to the SAN.

From a UE perspective, the UE is configured with one or more BWP / carriers, each with its own UE channel bandwidth. The UE does not need to be aware of the SAN channel bandwidth or how the SAN allocates bandwidth to different UEs.

The placement of the UE channel bandwidth for each UE carrier is flexible but can only be completely within the SAN channel bandwidth.

The relationship between the channel bandwidth, the guardband and the maximum transmission bandwidth configuration is shown in Figure 5.3.1-1.

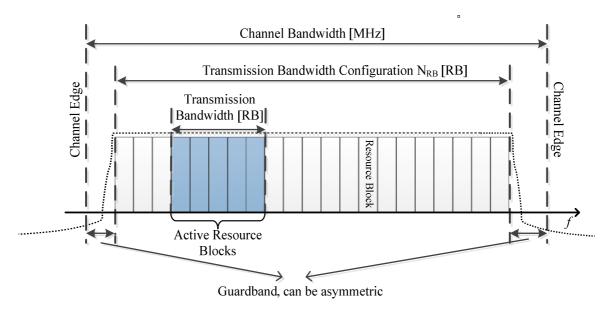


Figure 5.3.1-1: Definition of the channel bandwidth and the maximum transmission bandwidth configuration for one channel

5.3.2 Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration

The maximum transmission bandwidth configuration N_{RB} for each UE channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing is specified in Table 5.3.2-1 for FR1-NTN and table 5.3.2-2 for FR2-NTN.

Table 5.3.2-1: Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration N_{RB} for FR1-NTN

| SCS (kHz) | 5 MHz | 10 MHz | 15 MHz | 20 MHz | 30 MHz |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | N _{RB} |
| 15 | 25 | 52 | 79 | 106 | 160 |
| 30 | 11 | 24 | 38 | 51 | 78 |
| 60 | N/A | 11 | 18 | 24 | 38 |

Table 5.3.2-2: Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration N_{RB} for FR2-NTN

| SCS (kHz) | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| | N _{RB} | N _{RB} | N _{RB} | N _{RB} |
| 60 | 66 | 132 | 264 | N/A |
| 120 | 32 | 66 | 132 | 264 |

5.3.3 Minimum guardband and transmission bandwidth configuration

The minimum guardband for each UE channel bandwidth and SCS is specified in Table 5.3.3-1 for FR1-NTN and in table 5.3.3-2 for FR2-NTN.

Table 5.3.3-1: Minimum guardband for each UE channel bandwidth and SCS (kHz) for FR1-NTN

| SCS (kHz) | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 30 |
|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| , , | MHz | MHz | MHz | MHz | MHz |
| 15 | 242.5 | 312.5 | 382.5 | 452.5 | 592.5 |
| 30 | 505 | 665 | 645 | 805 | 945 |
| 60 | N/A | 1010 | 990 | 1330 | 1290 |

Table 5.3.3-2: Minimum guardband for each UE channel bandwidth and SCS (kHz) for FR2-NTN

| SCS (kHz) | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz |
|-----------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| 60 | 1210 | 2450 | 4930 | N/A |
| 120 | 1900 | 2420 | 4900 | 9860 |

NOTE: The minimum guardbands have been calculated using the following equation: (BW_{Channel} x 1000 (kHz) - N_{RB} x SCS x 12) / 2 - SCS/2, where N_{RB} are from Table 5.3.2-1 and Table 5.3.2-2.

Figure 5.3.3-1: Void

The number of RBs configured in any channel bandwidth shall ensure that the minimum guardband specified in this clause is met.

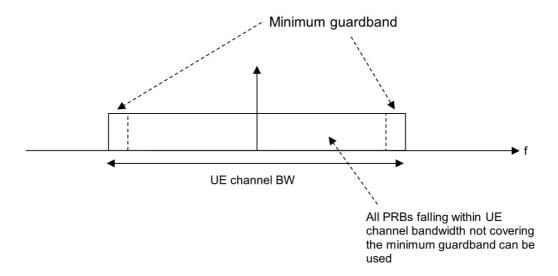


Figure 5.3.3-2: UE PRB utilization

In the case that multiple numerologies are multiplexed in the same symbol, the minimum guard band on each side of the carrier is the guard band applied at the configured UE channel bandwidth for the numerology that is transmitted/received immediately adjacent to the guard band.

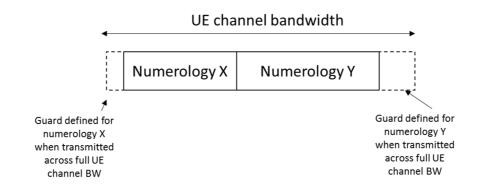


Figure 5.3.3-3: Guard band definition when transmitting multiple numerologies

NOTE: Figure 5.3.3-2 is not intended to imply the size of any guard between the two numerologies. Internumerology guard band within the carrier is implementation dependent.

5.3.4 RB alignment

The RB alignment for FR1-NTN refers to NR RB alignments as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 5.3.4.

The RB alignment for FR2-NTN refers to NR RB alignments as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-2 [15] clause 5.3.4.

5.3.5 UE channel bandwidth per operating band

The requirements in this specification apply to the combination of channel bandwidths, SCS and operating bands shown in Table 5.3.5-1 for FR1-NTN and table 5.3.5-2 for FR2-NTN. The transmission bandwidth configuration in Table 5.3.2-1 and Table 5.3.2-2 shall be supported for each of the specified channel bandwidths. The channel bandwidths are specified for both the Tx and Rx path.

Table 5.3.5-1: Channel bandwidths for each NTN satellite band in FR1-NTN

| NTN satellite | SCS | | UE Chan | nel bandwidth | n (MHz) | |
|---------------|-----|---|---------|---------------|---------|--------------|
| band | kHz | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 30 (NOTE) |
| | 15 | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| n256 | 30 | | 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| | 60 | | 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| | 15 | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| n255 | 30 | | 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| | 60 | | 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| | 15 | 5 | 10 | 15 | | |
| n254 | 30 | | 10 | 15 | | |
| | 60 | | 10 | 15 | | |

NOTE: Deployment of 30 MHz channel bandwidth for NTN SAN needs to be preceded by introduction of all applicable Tx RF, Rx RF, and demodulation requirements.

Table 5.3.5-2: Channel bandwidths for each NTN satellite band in FR2-NTN

| | | SAN channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | łz) |
|--------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|-----|-----|-----|
| SAN Operating Band | SCS (kHz) | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| n512 | 60 | 50 | 100 | 200 | |
| | 120 | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| n511 | 60 | 50 | 100 | 200 | |
| | 120 | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| n510 | 60 | 50 | 100 | 200 | |
| | 120 | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |

5.3.6 Asymmetric channel bandwidths

The UE channel bandwidth can be asymmetric in downlink and uplink. In asymmetric channel bandwidth operation, the narrower carrier shall be confined within the frequency range of the wider channel bandwidth.

In FDD, the confinement is defined as a maximum deviation to the Tx-Rx carrier center frequency separation (defined in table 5.4.4-1) as following:

$$\Delta F_{TX\text{-}RX} = \mid (BW_{DL} - BW_{UL})/2 \mid$$

The operating bands and supported asymmetric channel bandwidth combinations are defined in table 5.3.6-1.

Table 5.3.6-1: FDD asymmetric UL and DL channel bandwidth combinations

| NR Band | Channel bandwidths for UL (MHz) | Channel bandwidths for DL (MHz) | Asymmetric channel bandwidth combination set |
|---------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| n254 | 5 | 10,15 | 0 |
| | 10 | 15 | 0 |

NOTE 1: The assignment of the paired UL and DL channels are subject to a TX-RX separation as specified in clause 5.4.4.

NOTE 2: As indicated in TS38.306 [11], it is mandatory for UEs to support asymmetric channel BCS0 if there is an asymmetric BCS0 defined for the band.

5.4 Channel arrangement

5.4.1 Channel spacing

5.4.1.1 Channel spacing for adjacent NTN satellite carriers

The channel spacing for adjacent NTN satellite carriers in FR1-NTN refers to the NR channel spacing as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 5.4.1.1.

The channel spacing for adjacent NTN satellite carriers in FR2-NTN refers to the NR channel spacing as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-2 [15] clause 5.4.1.1.

5.4.2 Channel raster

5.4.2.1 NR-ARFCN and channel raster

The global frequency channel raster defines a set of RF reference frequencies F_{REF} . The RF reference frequency is used in signalling to identify the position of RF channels, SS blocks and other elements.

The global frequency raster is defined for all frequencies from 0 to 100 GHz. The granularity of the global frequency raster is ΔF_{Global} .

RF reference frequencies are designated by an NR Absolute Radio Frequency Channel Number (NR-ARFCN) in the range (0...2016666) on the global frequency raster. The relation between the NR-ARFCN and the RF reference frequency F_{REF} in MHz is given by the following equation, where $F_{REF-Offs}$ and $N_{REF-Offs}$ are given in Table 5.4.2.1-1 and N_{REF} is the NR-ARFCN.

$$F_{REF} = F_{REF-Offs} + \Delta F_{Global} (N_{REF} - N_{REF-Offs})$$

Table 5.4.2.1-1: NR-ARFCN parameters for the global frequency raster

| Frequency range (MHz) | ΔF _{Global} (kHz) | F _{REF-Offs} (MHz) | N _{REF-Offs} | Range of N _{REF} |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 0 – 3000 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 0 – 599999 |
| 3000 – 24250 | 15 | 3000 | 600000 | 600000 - 2016666 |
| 24250 - 30000 | 60 | 24250.08 | 2016667 | 2016667 – 2112499 |

The channel raster defines a subset of RF reference frequencies that can be used to identify the RF channel position in the uplink and downlink. The RF reference frequency for an RF channel maps to a resource element on the carrier. For each operating band, a subset of frequencies from the global frequency raster are applicable for that band and forms a channel raster with a granularity ΔF_{Raster} , which may be equal to or larger than ΔF_{Global} .

For the uplink of FDD FR1 NTN bands defined in Table 5.2.2-1.

$$F_{REF, \, shift} = F_{REF} + \Delta_{shift}, \, \Delta_{shift} = 0 \, \, kHz \, \, or \, \, 7.5 \, \, kHz.$$

where Δ_{shift} is signalled by the network in higher layer parameter frequencyShift7p5khz [7].

The mapping between the channel raster and corresponding resource element is given in clause 5.4.2.2. The applicable entries for each operating band are defined in clause 5.4.2.3.

5.4.2.2 Channel raster to resource element mapping

The mapping between the RF reference frequency on the channel raster and the corresponding resource element for FR1-NTN refers to the NR requirements specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 5.4.2.2.

The mapping between the RF reference frequency on the channel raster and the corresponding resource element for FR2-NTN refers to the NR requirements specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-2 [15] clause 5.4.2.2.

5.4.2.3 Channel raster entries for each operating band

The RF channel positions on the channel raster in each NTN satellite operating band are given through the applicable NR-ARFCN in Table 5.4.2.3-1 and Table 5.4.2.3-2 for FR1-NTN, and in Table 5.4.2.3-3 for FR2-NTN, using the channel raster to resource element mapping in clause 5.4.2.2.

For NTN satellite operating bands with 100 kHz channel raster, $\Delta F_{Raster} = 20 \times \Delta F_{Global}$. In this case every 20th NR-ARFCN within the operating band are applicable for the channel raster within the operating band and the step size for the channel raster in Table 5.4.2.3-1 is given as <20> for FR1-NTN.

Table 5.4.2.3-1: Applicable NR-ARFCN per operating band in FR1-NTN

| NTN satellite operating band | ΔF _{Raster} (kHz) | Uplink Range of N _{REF} (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | Downlink Range of N _{REF} (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | |
|---|-------------------------------|---|---|--|
| n256 | 100 | 396000 - <20> - 402000 | 434000 - <20> - 440000 | |
| n255 | 100 | 325300 - <20> - 332100 | 305000 - <20> - 311800 | |
| n254 100 322000 – <20> | | 322000 - <20> - 325300 | 496700 - <20> - 500000 | |
| NOTE: The channel numbers that designate carrier frequencies so close to the operating band | | | | |
| edg | es that the ca | rrier extends beyond the operating b | and edge shall not be used. | |

For NTN operating bands with 100 kHz channel raster, Enhanced channel raster is defined with $\Delta F_{Raster} = 2 \times \Delta F_{Global}$. In this case every 2th NR-ARFCN within the operating band are applicable for the channel raster within the operating band and the step size for the channel raster in Table 5.4.2.3-2 is given as <2>.

Table 5.4.2.3-2: Applicable NR-ARFCN per operating band in FR1-NTN

| NTN satellite operating band | ΔF _{Raster} (kHz) | Uplink Range of N _{REF} (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | Downlink Range of N _{REF} (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | Mandatory support |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|---|----------------------|
| n256 | 10 | 396000 - <2> - 402000 | 434000 - <2> - 440000 | Yes |
| n255 | 10 | 325300 - <2> - 332100 | 305000 - <2> - 311800 | Yes |
| n254 | 10 | 322000 - <2> - 325300 | 496700 - <2> - 500000 | Yes |

NOTE: The channel numbers that designate carrier frequencies so close to the operating band edges that the carrier extends beyond the operating band edge shall not be used. These channel numbers shall also be such that the minimum guard band for each channel bandwidth and SCS specified in Table 5.3.3-1 are met for carriers located at the upper or lower edge of an operating band.

For FR2-NTN satellite operating bands, $\Delta F_{\text{Raster}} = I_1 \times \Delta F_{\text{Global}}$ for UL channel and $\Delta F_{\text{Raster}} = I_2 \times \Delta F_{\text{Global}}$ for DL channel, where $(I_1, I_2) \in \{(1, 4) \text{ or } (2, 8)\}$. But $(I_1, I_2) = (2, 8)$ only applies under the condition that 120kHz SCS is configured in the channel and SSB SCS is equal to or larger than 120kHz. In this case, every I_1^{th} NR-ARFCN for UL channel and I_2^{th} NR-ARFCN for DL channel are applicable for the UL and DL channel raster correspondingly within the operating band and the $\langle UL_step\ size,\ DL_step\ size \rangle$ for the UL and DL channel raster in Table 5.4.2.3-3 is given as $\langle (I_1,I_2)\rangle$ for FR2-NTN.

Table 5.4.2.3-3: Applicable NR-ARFCN per operating band in FR2-NTN

| SAN operating band | ΔF _{Raster} (kHz) | Uplink range of N _{REF} (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | Downlink range of N _{REF} (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---|---|
| n512 | 60 | 2070833 - <1> - 2112499 | 1553336 - <4> - 1746664 |
| | 120 | 2070833 - <2> - 2112499 | 1553336 - <8> - 1746664 |
| n511 | 60 | 2084999 - <1> -2112499 | 1553336 - <4> - 1746664 |
| | 120 | 2084999 - <2> -2112499 | 1553336 - <8> - 1746664 |
| n510 | 60 | 2070833 - <1> - 2084999 | 1553336 - <4> - 1746664 |
| | 120 | 2070833 - <2> - 2084999 | 1553336 - <8> - 1746664 |

5.4.3 Synchronization raster

5.4.3.1 Synchronization raster and numbering

The synchronization raster indicates the frequency positions of the synchronization block that can be used by the UE for system acquisition when explicit signalling of the synchronization block position is not present.

A global synchronization raster is defined for all frequencies. The frequency position of the SS block is defined as SS_{REF} with corresponding number GSCN. The parameters defining the SS_{REF} and GSCN for all the frequency ranges are in Table 5.4.3.1-1.

The resource element corresponding to the SS block reference frequency SS_{REF} is given in clause 5.4.3.2. The synchronization raster and the subcarrier spacing of the synchronization block is defined separately for each band.

The synchronization raster and the corresponding SS block do not cover all possible RF channel bandwidth and locations on Enhanced channel raster.

Table 5.4.3.1-1: GSCN parameters for the global frequency raster

| Frequency range | SS Block frequency position SSREF | GSCN | Range of GSCN | |
|--|---|--------------|---------------|--|
| 0 – 3000 MHz | N * 1200kHz + M * 50 kHz, | 3N + (M-3)/2 | 2 – 7498 | |
| | N=1:2499, M ε {1,3,5} ¹ | | | |
| 3000 – 24250 | 3000 MHz + N * 1.44 MHz, N = 0:14756 | 7499 + N | 7499 – 22255 | |
| NOTE: The default value for operating bands with which only support SCS spaced channel raster(s) is M=3. | | | | |

5.4.3.2 Synchronization raster to synchronization block resource element mapping

The mapping between the synchronization raster and the corresponding resource element of the SS block in FR1-NTN refers to 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 5.4.3.2.

The mapping between the synchronization raster and the corresponding resource element of the SS block in FR2-NTN refers to 3GPP TS 38.101-2 [15] clause 5.4.3.2.

5.4.3.3 Synchronization raster entries for each operating band

The synchronization raster for each band is give in Table 5.4.3.3-1 and Table 5.4.3.3-2. The distance between applicable GSCN entries is given by the <Step size> indicated in Table 5.4.3.3-1 for FR1-NTN and Table 5.4.3.3-2 for FR2-NTN.

Table 5.4.3.3-1: Applicable SS raster entries per operating band (FR1-NTN)

| NTN satellite operating band | SS Block SCS | SS Block pattern ¹ | Range of GSCN (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | |
|--|--------------|-------------------------------|---|--|
| n256 | 15 kHz | Case A | 5429 - <1> - 5494 | |
| n255 | 15 kHz | Case A | 3818 - <1> - 3892 | |
| | 30 kHz | Case B | 3824 - <1> - 3886 | |
| n254 | 15 kHz | Case A | 6215 - <1> - 6244 | |
| | 30 kHz | Case C | 6218 - <1> - 6241 | |
| NOTE: SS Block pattern is defined in clause 4.1 in 3GPP TS 38.213 [7]. | | | | |

Table 5.4.3.3-2: Applicable SS raster entries per operating band (FR2-NTN)

| SAN operating band | SS Block SCS | SS Block pattern (NOTE) | Range of GSCN (First – <step size=""> – Last)</step> | | | |
|--|--------------|-------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| n512 | 120 kHz | Case D | 17448 – <12> – 19428 | | | |
| | 240 kHz | Case E | 17472 – <24> – 19416 | | | |
| n511 | 120 kHz | Case D | 17448 – <12> – 19428 | | | |
| | 240 kHz | Case E | 17472 – <24> – 19416 | | | |
| n510 | 120 kHz | Case D | 17448 – <12> – 19428 | | | |
| | 240 kHz | Case E | 17472 – <24> – 19416 | | | |
| NOTE: SS Block pattern is defined in section 4.1 in TS 38.213 [7]. | | | | | | |

5.4.4 TX-RX frequency separation

The default TX channel (carrier centre frequency) to RX channel (carrier centre frequency) separation for operating bands is specified in Table 5.4.4-1 for FR1-NTN.

Table 5.4.4-1: UE TX-RX frequency separation (FR1-NTN)

| NTN Satellite Operating Band | TX – RX carrier centre frequency separation | | | |
|--|---|--|--|--|
| n256 | 190 MHz ¹ | | | |
| | 165 to 215 MHz ² | | | |
| n255 | -101.5 MHz ¹ | | | |
| | -72.5 to -130.5 MHz ² | | | |
| n254 | 862 – 885 MHz | | | |
| NOTE 1: Default Tx-Rx separation | | | | |
| NOTE 2: The verification of flexit | The verification of flexible Tx-Rx frequency separation | | | |
| within this range is limited to reference sensitivity. | | | | |
| Further details are spec | cified in clause 7.3.2 | | | |

6 Conducted transmitter characteristics

6.1 General

Unless otherwise stated, the transmitter characteristics for satellite access UEs are specified at the antenna connector of the UE with a single or multiple transmit antenna(s). For UE with integral antenna only, a reference antenna with a gain of 0 dBi is assumed. Handheld power class 3 UE is assumed in Release 17 for satellite access.

All requirements in this section are applicable to devices supporting GSO and/or NGSO satellites.

6.2 Transmitter power

6.2.1 UE maximum output power

The following UE Power Classes define the maximum output power for any transmission bandwidth within the channel bandwidth of NR carrier unless otherwise stated. The period of measurement shall be at least one sub frame (1 ms).

Table 6.2.1-1: UE Power Class

| NR satellite band | Class 3 (dBm) | Tolerance (dB) | | |
|---|---------------|----------------|--|--|
| n256 | 23 | ±2 | | |
| n255 | 23 | ±2 | | |
| n254 | 23 | ±2 | | |
| NOTE 1: Province is the maximum LIE power specified without taking into account the tolerance | | | | |

NOTE 1: P_{PowerClass} is the maximum UE power specified without taking into account the tolerance NOTE 2: Power class 3 is default power class unless otherwise stated

The UE shall meet the following additional requirements for maximum mean transmission power density specified in Table 6.2.1-2 when NS is signaled and when the configured channel overlaps with any portion of the specified frequency range.

Table 6.2.1-2: Additional requirements for transmit power density

| NR Band | NS value | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | Frequency range (MHz) | Maximum power density |
|------------|----------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| n254 | NS_04N | 5 | 1610 - 1618.25 | 27dBm/4kHz (mean) |
| | NS_05N | 5 | 1618.25 - 1626.5 | 15dBm/4kHz (peak limit) |
| | | 10, 15 | 1610 – 1626.5 | |

6.2.2 UE maximum output power reduction

UE is allowed to reduce the maximum output power due to higher order modulations and transmit bandwidth configurations. For UE power class 3, the allowed maximum power reduction (MPR) is defined as Table 6.2.2-1 in 3GPP TS 38.101-1[5] clause 6.2.2.

6.2.3 UE additional maximum output power reduction

6.2.3.1 General

Additional emission requirements can be signalled by the network. Each additional emission requirement is associated with a unique network signalling (NS) value indicated in RRC signalling by an NR frequency band number of the applicable operating band and an associated value in the field *additionalSpectrumEmission*. Throughout this specification, the notion of indication or signalling of an NS value refers to the corresponding indication of an NR satellite band number of the applicable operating band, the IE field *freqBandIndicatorNR* and an associated value of *additionalSpectrumEmission* in the relevant RRC information elements [8].

To meet the additional requirements, additional maximum power reduction (A-MPR) is allowed for the maximum output power as specified in Table 6.2.1-1. Unless stated otherwise, the total reduction to UE maximum output power is max(MPR, A-MPR) where MPR is defined in clause 6.2.2. Outer and inner allocation notation used in clause 6.2.3 is defined in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 6.2.2. In absence of modulation and waveform types the A-MPR applies to all modulation and waveform types.

Table 6.2.3.1-1 specifies the additional requirements with their associated network signalling values and the allowed A-MPR and applicable operating band(s) for each NS value. The mapping of NR satellite band numbers and values of the *additionalSpectrumEmission* to network signalling labels is specified in Table 6.2.3.1-1A.

Table 6.2.3.1-1: Additional maximum power reduction (A-MPR)

| Network signalling label | Requirements (clause) | NR satellite Band | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | Resources blocks (<i>N</i> _{RB}) | A-MPR (dB) |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|---|---|
| NS_01 | | Table 5.2.2-1 (NOTE 3) | 5, 10, 15, 20 | Table 5.3.2-1 | N/A |
| NS_24 | 6.5.3.3.13 in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] | n256 | 5, 10, 15, 20 | Table 6.2.3.15-1 in 3GPP TS 38.101- 1 [5] | Clause 6.2.3.15 in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] ² |
| NS_02N | 6.5.3.3.2 | n255 | 5, 10, 15, 20 | | N/A |
| NS_100 | 6.5.2.4.2 in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] | n256 ¹ | | | Table 6.2.3.1-2 in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] |
| NS_03N | 6.5.3.3.3 | n254 | 5, 10, 15 | | Clause 6.2.3.2 |
| NS_04N | 6.5.2.3.1 6.5.3.3.4 | n254 | 5 | | Clause 6.2.3.3 |
| NS_05N | 6.5.2.3.2 6.5.3.3.4 | n254 | 5, 10, 15 | | Clause 6.2.3.4 |

NOTE 1: This NS can be signalled for NR satellite bands that have UTRA services deployed.

NOTE 2: A-MPR for the upper 5 MHz of the band is not specified, and therefore shall be used as a guard band.

NOTE 3: The NS_01 label with the field additionalPmax [8] absent is default for all NR satellite bands.

Table 6.2.3.1-1A: Mapping of network signalling label

| NR satellite band | Value of additionalSpectrumEmission | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------|---------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|-------------|
| | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| n256 | NS_01 | NS_24 | NS_100 | | | | | |
| n255 | NS_01 | NS_02N | | | | | | |
| n254 | NS_01 | NS_03N | NS_04N | NS_05N | | | | |
| | additionalSpect 3GPP TS 38.33 | | orresponds to | an information | element of the | e same name o | defined in claus | se 6.3.2 of |

A-MPR for NS_03N 6.2.3.2

Table 6.2.3.2-1: A-MPR regions for NS_03N

| Channel BW | Carrier Center Frequency | RB_start*12*SCS (MHz) | LCRB*12*SCS (MHz) | A-MPR |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-------|
| 5MHz | 1612.5 <= fc < 1613.9 | <= 0.36 | <= 0.36 | A1 |
| | | | >= 2.88 | A2 |
| | 1613.9 <= fc < 1615.7 | | >= 3.24 | A3 |
| 10MHz | 1615 <= fc < 1620.1 | <= 1.8 | <= 5.04 | A4 |
| | | <= 1.8 | > 5.04 | A5 |
| | | > 7.2 | > 0 | A6 |
| | | > 1.8 | >= 2.88 | A2 |
| | 1620.1 <= fc < 1621.5 | | <= 6.48 | A6 |
| | | <= 0.36 | <= 0.36 | A1 |
| | fc = 1621.5 | | >= 7.2 | A1 |
| 15MHz | all | <= 3.6 | <= 5.04 | A4 |
| | | <= 3.6 | > 5.04 | A5 |
| | | > 10.44 | | A6 |
| | | > 3.6 | >= 4.32 | A2 |

Table 6.2.3.2-2: A-MPR for NS_03N

| | Modulation | A1 | A2 | A3 | A4 | A5 | A6 |
|------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|
| DFT-s-OFDM | Pi/2 BPSK | 2.5 | 3.0 | 1.0 | 4.0 | 6.5 | 1.5 |
| | QPSK | 2.5 | 4.0 | 2.5 | 6.0 | 7.0 | 2.0 |
| | 16QAM | 3.0 | 4.5 | 3.0 | 6.5 | 7.5 | 2.5 |
| | 64QAM | 3.5 | 5 | 3.5 | 7 | 8 | 3 |
| | 256QAM | 4.5 | 6 | 4.5 | 8 | 9 | 4 |
| CP-OFDM | QPSK | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.0 |
| | 16QAM | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.0 |
| | 64QAM | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.0 |
| | 256QAM | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.0 |

6.2.3.3 A-MPR for NS_04N

Table 6.2.3.3-1: A-MPR regions for NS_04N

| Channel BW | Carrier Center Frequency | RB_start*12*SCS (MHz) | LCRB*12*SCS (MHz) | A-MPR |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-------|
| 5MHz | 1612.5 <= fc < 1613.9 | <= 0.36 | <= 0.36 | A1 |
| | | | >= 2.88 | A2 |
| | 1613.9 <= fc < 1615.7 | | >= 3.24 | A3 |

Table 6.2.3.3-2: A-MPR for NS_04N

| | Modulation | A1 | A2 | A3 |
|------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|
| DFT-s-OFDM | Pi/2 BPSK | 2.5 | 3.0 | 1.0 |
| | QPSK | 2.5 | 4.0 | 2.5 |
| | 16QAM | 3.0 | 4.5 | 3.0 |
| | 64QAM | 3.5 | 5 | 3.5 |
| | 256QAM | 4.5 | 6 | 4.5 |
| CP-OFDM | QPSK | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 |
| | 16QAM | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 |
| | 64QAM | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 |
| | 256QAM | 3.5 | 6.0 | 4.0 |

6.2.3.4 A-MPR for NS_05N

Table 6.2.3.4-1: A-MPR regions for NS_05N

| Channel BW | Carrier Center Frequency | RB_start*12*SCS (MHz) | LCRB*12*SCS (MHz) | A-MPR |
|------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|-------|
| 5MHz | 1622.4 < fc <= 1624 | >= 3.6 | > 0 | A3 |
| | | | >= 2.88 | A1 |
| 10MHz | 1615 <= fc < 1620.1 | <= 1.8 | <= 5.04 | A4 |
| | | <= 1.8 | > 5.04 | A5 |
| | | > 7.2 | > 0 | A6 |
| | | > 1.8 | >= 2.88 | A2 |
| | 1620.1 <= fc <= 1621.5 | | <= 7.2 | A6 |
| | | <= 0.36 | <= 0.36 | A1 |
| | | > 7.2 | > 0 | A6 |
| 15MHz | all | <= 3.6 | <= 5.04 | A4 |
| | | <= 3.6 | > 5.04 | A5 |
| | | > 10.44 | | A6 |
| | | > 3.6 | >= 4.32 | A2 |

Table 6.2.3.4-2: A-MPR for NS_05N

| | Modulation | A1 | A2 | A3 | A4 | A5 | A6 |
|------------|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|
| DFT-s-OFDM | Pi/2 BPSK | 1.5 | 5.0 | 1.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 2.0 |
| | QPSK | 1.5 | 5.0 | 1.5 | 6.5 | 7.0 | 2.5 |
| | 16QAM | 2.0 | 5.5 | 2.0 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 3.0 |
| | 64QAM | 2.5 | 6 | 2.5 | 7.5 | 8 | 3.5 |
| | 256QAM | 3.5 | 7 | 3.5 | 8.5 | 9 | 4.5 |
| CP-OFDM | QPSK | 3.0 | 6.5 | | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.5 |
| | 16QAM | 3.0 | 6.5 | | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.5 |
| | 64QAM | 3.0 | 6.5 | | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.5 |
| | 256QAM | 3.0 | 6.5 | | 8.0 | 10.0 | 4.5 |

6.2.4 Configured transmitted power

The requirements for configured transmitted power defined in subclause 6.2.4 of 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 6.2.4 shall apply to NTN satellite UE.

6.3 Output power dynamics.

6.3.1 Minimum output power

The minimum controlled output power of the UE is defined as the power in the channel bandwidth for all transmit bandwidth configurations (resource blocks), when the power is set to a minimum value.

The minimum output power is defined as the mean power in at least one sub-frame (1 ms). The minimum output power shall not exceed the values specified in Table 6.3.1-1.

Table 6.3.1-1: Minimum output power

| Channel bandwidth (MHz) | Minimum output power (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 5 | -40 | 4.515 | |
| 10 | -40 | 9.375 | |
| 15 | -40 | 14.235 | |
| 20 | -40 | 19.095 | |

6.3.2 Transmit OFF power

Transmit OFF power is defined as the mean power in the channel bandwidth when the transmitter is OFF. The transmitter is considered OFF when the UE is not allowed to transmit on any of its ports.

The transmit OFF power is defined as the mean power in a duration of at least one sub-frame (1 ms) excluding any transient periods. The transmit OFF power shall not exceed the values specified in Table 6.3.2-1.

Table 6.3.2-1: Transmit OFF power

| Channel bandwidth | (MHz) | 5, 10, 15, 20 |
|-----------------------|-------|--|
| REF_SCS | (kHz) | 15 |
| Transmit OFF power | (dBm) | -50 |
| Measurement bandwidth | (MHz) | MBW=REF_SCS*(12*N _{RB} +1)/1000 |

6.3.3 Transmit ON/OFF time mask

The requirements for transmit ON/OFF time mask defined in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 6.3.3 shall apply for NTN satellite UE.

6.3.4 Power control

The requirements for Power control defined in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 6.3.4 shall apply for NTN satellite UE.

6.4 Transmit signal quality

6.4.1 Frequency error

The NTN satellite UE basic measurement interval of modulated carrier frequency is 1 UL slot. The NTN satellite UE pre-compensates the uplink modulated carrier frequency by the estimated Doppler shift according to 3GPP TS 38.300 [9] clause 16.14.2. The mean value of basic measurements of NTN UE modulated carrier frequency shall be accurate to within ± 0.1 PPM observed over a period of 1 ms of cumulated measurement intervals compared to ideally pre-compensated reference uplink carrier frequency.

[NOTE: The ideally pre-compensated reference uplink carrier frequency consists of the UL carrier frequency signalled to the UE by SAN and UL pre-compensated Doppler frequency shift.]

6.4.2 Transmit modulation quality

6.4.2.1 General

The requirements for transmit modulation quality defined in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 6.4.2 shall apply for NTN satellite UE except for clause 6.4.2.5.

6.4.2.2 Phase continuity requirements for DMRS bundling

For bands that NTN UE indicates the support of DMRS bundling, when the NTN UE is configured with DMRS bundling, the maximum allowable difference between the measured phase value in any slot p-1 and slot p, or slot 0 and any slot p for each antenna connector shall satisfy the requirements as listed in Table 6.4.2.5-1 of TS 38.101-1 [5] for the measurement conditions defined in Table 6.4.2.5-2 of TS 38.101-1 [5], within a measurement time window limited by the UE capability of maximum duration for DMRS bundling [maxDurationDMRS-Bundling-r17] for GSO scenario and [maxDurationDMRS-Bundling-NTN-NGSO-r18] for NGSO scenario , and defined for each frequency band separately. The phase value for each slot is measured as shown in Annex F.9 of TS 38.101-1 [5]. These requirements apply to PUCCH and PUSCH transmissions with DFT-s-OFDM and CP-OFDM waveforms.

The above requirements are applicable when all the following conditions are met within the measurement time window:

- RB allocation in terms of length and frequency position does not change, and intra-slot and inter-slot frequency hopping is not activated.
- Modulation order does not change.
- No network commanded TA takes effect.
- The TPMI precoder does not change.
- There is no change in UE transmission power level, and no change in the level of P-MPR applied by the UE.
- UE is not scheduled with uplink transmission of other physical channel/signal in-between the PUSCH or PUCCH transmissions.
- Doppler conditions are set to zero and delay conditions are set to constant.

6.5 Output RF spectrum emissions

6.5.1 Occupied bandwidth

Occupied bandwidth is defined as the bandwidth containing 99 % of the total integrated mean power of the transmitted spectrum on the assigned channel. The occupied bandwidth for all transmission bandwidth configurations (Resources Blocks) shall be less than the channel bandwidth specified in Table 6.5.1-1.

Table 6.5.1-1: Occupied channel bandwidth

| | NR NTN satellite channel bandwidth (MHz) |
|----------------------------------|--|
| | 5, 10, 15, 20 |
| Occupied channel bandwidth (MHz) | Same as NR NTN satellite channel bandwidth |

6.5.2 Out of band emission

6.5.2.1 General

The Out of band emissions are unwanted emissions immediately outside the assigned channel bandwidth resulting from the modulation process and non-linearity in the transmitter but excluding spurious emissions. This out of band emission limit is specified in terms of a spectrum emission mask and an adjacent channel leakage power ratio.

To improve measurement accuracy, sensitivity and efficiency, the resolution bandwidth may be smaller than the measurement bandwidth. When the resolution bandwidth is smaller than the measurement bandwidth, the result should be integrated over the measurement bandwidth in order to obtain the equivalent noise bandwidth of the measurement bandwidth.

6.5.2.2 Spectrum emission mask

The spectrum emission mask of the UE applies to frequencies (Δf_{OOB}) starting from the \pm edge of the assigned NR channel bandwidth. For frequencies offset greater than Δf_{OOB} , the spurious requirements in clause 6.5.3 are applicable.

NOTE: For measurement conditions at the edge of each frequency range, the lowest frequency of the measurement position in each frequency range should be set at the lowest boundary of the frequency range plus MBW/2. The highest frequency of the measurement position in each frequency range should be set at the highest boundary of the frequency range minus MBW/2. MBW denotes the measurement bandwidth defined for the protected band.

The power of any UE emission shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 6.5.2.2-1 for the specified channel bandwidth.

Table 6.5.2.2-1: General NR spectrum emission mask

| Δf _{OOB} | Channel bandwidth (MHz | Measurement bandwidth | |
|---|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| (MHz) | 5 10, 15, 20 | | |
| ± 0-1 | -13 | -13 | 1 % of channel BW |
| ± 1-5 | -10 | -10 | |
| ± 5-6 | -13 | | |
| ± 6-10 | -25 | | 1 MHz |
| ± 5-BW _{Channel} | | -13 | |
| ± BW _{Channel} -(BW _{Channel} +5) | | -25 | |

6.5.2.3 Additional spectrum emission mask

6.5.2.3.1 Requirements for network signalling value "NS 04N"

When "NS_04N" is indicated in the cell, the power of any UE emission shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 6.5.2.3.1-1 for any channel bandwidth configured within 1610-1618.25MHz.

Table 6.5.2.3.1-1: Additional requirements for "NS 04N"

| Δf _{OOB} (kHz) | Spectrum emission limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ± 0-160 | -2 | |
| ± 160-2300 | -2 to -26 | 30kHz |
| ± 2300-18500 | -26 | |
| NOTE 1: Spectrum emissio | | |

NOTE 2: The EIRP requirement in regulation is converted to conducted requirement using a 0dBi antenna.

6.5.2.3.2 Requirements for network signalling value "NS_05N"

When "NS_05N" is indicated in the cell, the power of any UE emission shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 6.5.2.3.2-1 for any channel bandwidth configured within 1618.25-1626.5MHz.

Table 6.5.2.3.2-1: Additional requirements for "NS_05N"

| Δf _{OOB} (kHz) | Spectrum emission limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| ± 0-160 | -5 | |
| ± 160-225 | -5 to -8.5 | |
| ± 225-650 | -8.5 to -15 | 30kHz |
| ± 650-1365 | -15 | SUKHZ |
| ± 1365-1800 | -23 to -26 | |
| ± 1800-16500 | -26 | |

NOTE 1: Spectrum emissions are linearly interpolated in dBm versus frequency offset.

NOTE 2: The EIRP requirement in regulation is converted to conducted requirement using a 0dBi antenna.

6.5.2.4 Adjacent channel leakage ratio

Adjacent Channel Leakage power Ratio (ACLR) is the ratio of the filtered mean power centred on the assigned channel frequency to the filtered mean power centred on an adjacent channel frequency.

To improve measurement accuracy, sensitivity and efficiency, the resolution bandwidth may be smaller than the measurement bandwidth. When the resolution bandwidth is smaller than the measurement bandwidth, the result should be integrated over the measurement bandwidth in order to obtain the equivalent noise bandwidth of the measurement bandwidth.

6.5.2.4.1 NR ACLR

NR Adjacent Channel Leakage power Ratio (NR_{ACLR}) is the ratio of the filtered mean power centred on the assigned NR channel frequency to the filtered mean power centred on an adjacent NR channel frequency at nominal channel spacing.

The assigned NR channel power and adjacent NR channel power are measured with rectangular filters with measurement bandwidths specified in Table 6.5.2.4.1-1.

If the measured adjacent channel power is greater than -50 dBm then the NR_{ACLR} shall be higher than the value specified in Table 6.5.2.4.1-2.

Table 6.5.2.4.1-1: NR ACLR measurement bandwidth

| Channel bandwidth | (MHz) | 5,10,15,20 | |
|-------------------------------|-------|--|--|
| REF_SCS | (kHz) | 15 | |
| NR ACLR measurement bandwidth | (MHz) | MBW=REF_SCS*(12*N _{RB} +1)/1000 | |

Table 6.5.2.4.1-2: NR ACLR requirement

| | Power class 3 |
|---------|---------------|
| NR ACLR | 30 dB |

6.5.2.4.2 UTRA ACLR

UTRA adjacent channel leakage power ratio (UTRA_{ACLR}) is the ratio of the filtered mean power centred on the assigned NR channel frequency to the filtered mean power centred on an adjacent(s) UTRA channel frequency.

 $UTRA_{ACLR}$ is specified for the first adjacent UTRA channel ($UTRA_{ACLR1}$) which center frequency is \pm 2.5 MHz from NR channel edge and for the 2^{nd} adjacent UTRA channel ($UTRA_{ACLR2}$) which center frequency is \pm 7.5 MHz from NR channel edge.

The UTRA channel power is measured with a RRC filter with roll-off factor $\alpha = 0.22$ and bandwidth of 3.84 MHz. The assigned NR channel power is measured with a rectangular filter with measurement bandwidth specified in Table 6.5.2.4.1-1.

If the measured adjacent channel power is greater than -50 dBm then the UTRA_{ACLR1} and UTRA_{ACLR2} shall be higher than the value specified in Table 6.5.2.4.2-1.

Table 6.5.2.4.2-1: UTRA ACLR requirement

| | Power class 3 |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| UTRA _{ACLR1} | 33 dB |
| UTRA _{ACLR2} | 36 dB |

UTRA ACLR requirement is applicable when signalled by the network with network signalling value indicated by the field *additionalSpectrumEmission*.

6.5.3 Spurious emission

6.5.3.1 General spurious emissions

Unless otherwise stated, the spurious emission limits apply for the frequency ranges that are more than F_{OOB} (MHz) in Table 6.5.3.1-1 from the edge of the channel bandwidth. The spurious emission limits in Table 6.5.3.1-2 apply for all transmitter band configurations (N_{RB}) and channel bandwidths.

Table 6.5.3.1-1: Boundary between NR out of band and general spurious emission domain

| Channel bandwidth | OOB boundary F _{OOB} (MHz) |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| BW _{Channel} | BW _{Channel} + 5 |

Table 6.5.3.1-2: Requirement for general spurious emissions limits

| Frequency Range | Maximum Level | Measurement bandwidth | NOTE |
|--|------------------|-----------------------|------|
| 9 kHz ≤ f < 150 kHz | -36 dBm | 1 kHz | |
| 150 kHz ≤ f < 30 MHz | -36 dBm | 10 kHz | |
| 30 MHz ≤ f < 1000 MHz | -36 dBm | 100 kHz | |
| 1 GHz ≤ f < 5 th harmonic of the upper frequency edge of the UL operating band in GHz | -30 dBm | 1 MHz | |

6.5.3.2 Spurious emissions for UE co-existence

This clause specifies the requirements for NR NTN satellite bands for UE coexistence with protected bands.

Table 6.5.3.2-1: Requirements for spurious emissions for UE co-existence

| NR NTN | Spurious emission for UE co-existence | | | | | | |
|-------------------|---|--------------------------|---|----------------------|---------------------------|--------------|------|
| satellite Band | Protected band | nd Frequency range (MHz) | | | Maximum Level (dBm) | MBW (MHz) | NOTE |
| n254 | NR Band n1, n2, n3, n5, n7, n8, n12, n13, n14, n18, n20, n24, n25, n26, n28, n29, n30, n31, n34, n38, n39, n40, n41, n48, n50, n51, n53, n54, n65, n66, n67, n70, n71, n72, n74, n75, n76, n77, n78, n85, n90, n91, n92, n93, n94, n100, n101, n105, n106, n109 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | |
| | E-UTRA Band 73, 87, 88, 103 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | |
| | NR Band n79, n104 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | 2 |
| n255 | NR Band n1, n2, n3, n5, n7, n8, n12, n13, n14, n18, n20, n24, n25, n26, n28, n29, n30, n31, n34, n38, n39, n40, n41, n48, n50, n51, n53, n65, n66, n67, n70, n71, n72, n74, n75, n76, n85, n90, n91, n92, n93, n94, n100, n101, n105, n106, n109 | F _{DL_low} | 1 | F_{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | |
| | NR Band n77, n78, n79 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | 2 |
| n256 | NR Band n1, n3, n5, n7, n8, n12, n13, n14, n18, n20, n24, n26, n28, n29, n30, n31, n38, n39, n40, n41, n48, n50, n51, n53, n54, n65, n66, n67, n71, n72, n74, n75, n76, n78, n79, n85, n90, n91, n92, n93, n94, n100, n101, n105, n106, n109 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | |
| | E-UTRA Band 33, 35 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | |
| | NR Band n77 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | -50 | 1 | 2 |
| | NR Band n2, n25, n70 | F _{DL_low} | - | F _{DL_high} | NA | NA | 3 |

NOTE 1: The protected NR or E-UTRA bands are specified in clause 5.2 from 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] or 3GPP TS 36.101 [10]. F_{DL_low} and F_{DL_high} refer to each frequency band specified in Table 5.2-1 in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] or 3GPP TS 36.101 [10].

NOTE 2: As exceptions, measurements with a level up to the applicable requirements defined in Table 6.5.3.1-2 are permitted for each assigned NR carrier used in the measurement due to 2nd, 3rd, 4th or 5th harmonic spurious emissions. Due to spreading of the harmonic emission the exception is also allowed for the first 1 MHz frequency range immediately outside the harmonic emission on both sides of the harmonic emission. This results in an overall exception interval centred at the harmonic emission of (2 MHz + N x L_{CRB} x RB_{size} kHz), where N is 2, 3, 4, 5 for the 2nd, 3rd, 4th or 5th harmonic respectively. The exception is allowed if the measurement bandwidth (MBW) totally or partially overlaps the overall exception interval.

| NR NTN satellite Band | Spurious emission for UE co-existence | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------|------|--|
| | Protected band | Frequency range (MHz) | Maximum Level (dBm) | MBW (MHz) | NOTE | |
| NOTE 3: | The co-existence between n256 and band n2, n25 and n70 is subject to regional/national regulation. | | | | | |

NOTE: To simplify Table 6.5.3.2-1, NR band numbers are listed for bands which are specified only for NR operation or both E-UTRA and NR operation. E-UTRA band numbers are listed for bands which are specified only for E-UTRA operation.

6.5.3.3 Additional spurious emissions

6.5.3.3.1 General

These requirements are specified in terms of an additional spectrum emission requirement. Additional spurious emission requirements are signalled by the network to indicate that the UE shall meet an additional requirement for a specific deployment scenario as part of the cell handover/broadcast message.

6.5.3.3.2 Requirement for network signalling value "NS_02N"

When "NS_02N" is indicated in the cell, the power of any UE emission shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 6.5.3.3.2-1. This requirement also applies for the frequency ranges that are less than F_{OOB} (MHz) in Table 6.5.3.1-1 from the edge of the channel bandwidth.

Table 6.5.3.3.2-1: Additional requirements for "NS 02N"

| Frequency range (MHz) | Channel bandwidth / Spectrum emission limit ¹ (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth | NOTE | |
|---|--|--------------------------|--|--|
| | 5 MHz, 10 MHz, 15 | | | |
| | MHz, 20 MHz | | | |
| 1559≤ f < 1605 | -50 | 700 Hz | Averaged over any 2 millisecond active transmission interval | |
| 1605≤ f ≤ 1610 | -50 + 24/5 (f-1605) | 700Hz | | |
| 1559 ≤ f < 1605 | -40 | 1MHz | Averaged over any 2 millisecond active transmission interval | |
| 1605≤ f ≤ 1610 | -40 + 24/5 (f-1605) | 1MHz | | |
| NOTE: The EIRP requirement in regulation is converted to conducted requirement using a 0 dBi antenna. | | | | |

6.5.3.3.3 Requirement for network signalling value "NS_03N"

When "NS_03N" is indicated in the cell, the power of any UE emission shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 6.5.3.3.3-1. This requirement also applies for the frequency ranges that are less than F_{OOB} (MHz) in Table 6.5.3.1-1 from the edge of the channel bandwidth.

Table 6.5.3.3.3-1: Additional out-of-band requirements for "NS_03N"

| Frequency range (MHz) | Channel bandwidth / Spectrum emission limit ¹ (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth | NOTE | | |
|--|--|-----------------------|--|--|--|
| | 5 MHz, 10 MHz, 15 MHz | | | | |
| 1559 ≤ f < 1605 | -50 | 700 Hz | Discreet emissions | | |
| 1605 ≤ f ≤ 1610 | -50 + 60/5 (f-1605) | 700 Hz | averaged over any 2 millisecond active transmission interval | | |
| 1559 ≤ f < 1605 | -40 | 1MHz | Averaged over any 2 | | |
| 1605 ≤ f ≤ 1610 | -40 + 60/5 (f-1605) | 1MHz | millisecond active transmission interval | | |
| NOTE: The EIRP requirement in regulation is converted to conducted requirement using a 0dBi antenna. | | | | | |

6.5.3.3.4 Requirement for network signalling value "NS_04N" and "NS_05N"

When "NS_04N" or "NS_05N" is indicated in the cell, the power of any UE emission shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 6.5.3.3.4-1. This requirement also applies for the frequency ranges that are less than F_{OOB} (MHz) in Table 6.5.3.1-1 from the edge of the channel bandwidth.

Table 6.5.3.3.4-1: Additional out-of-band requirements for "NS_04N" and "NS_05N"

| Frequency range (MHz) | Channel bandwidth / Spectrum emission limit ¹ (dBm) 5 MHz, 10 MHz, 15 MHz | Measurement bandwidth | NOTE | |
|--|---|--------------------------|---|--|
| 1559 ≤ f < 1605 | -40 | 1MHz | Averaged over any 2 | |
| 1605 ≤ f ≤ 1610 | -40 + 60/5 (f-1605) | 1MHz | millisecond active transmission interval | |
| | | | | |
| 1628.5 ≤ f < 1631.5 | -30 | 30kHz | | |
| 1631.5 ≤ f < 1636.5 | -30 | 100kHz | | |
| 1636.5 ≤ f < 1646.5 | -30 | 300kHz | | |
| 1646.5 ≤ f < 1666.5 | -30 | 1MHz | | |
| 1666.5 ≤ f ≤ 2200 | -30 | 3MHz | | |
| NOTE: The EIRP requirement in regulation is converted to conducted requirement using a 0dBi antenna. | | | | |

6.5.4 Transmit intermodulation

The transmit intermodulation performance is a measure of the capability of the transmitter to inhibit the generation of signals in its non-linear elements caused by presence of the wanted signal and an interfering signal reaching the transmitter via the antenna.

UE transmit intermodulation is defined by the ratio of the mean power of the wanted signal to the mean power of the intermodulation product when an interfering CW signal is added at a level below the wanted signal at each transmitter antenna port with the other antenna port(s) if any terminated. Both the wanted signal power and the intermodulation product power are measured through NR rectangular filter with measurement bandwidth shown in Table 6.5.4-1.

The requirement of transmit intermodulation is specified in Table 6.5.4-1.

Table 6.5.4-1: Transmit Intermodulation

| Wanted signal channel bandwidth | BW _{Channel} | | | |
|--|---|---|--|--|
| Interference signal frequency offset from | BWchannel | 2*BWchannel | | |
| channel center | DVV Channel | Z DVV Channel | | |
| Interference CW signal level | -40 dBc | | | |
| Intermodulation product | < -29 dBc | < -35 dBc | | |
| Measurement bandwidth | The maximum transmission bandwidth configuration among the different SCS's for the channel BW as defined in Table 6.5.2.4.1-1 | | | |
| Measurement offset from channel center | BW _{Channel} and 2*BW _{Channel} | 2*BW _{Channel} and 4*BW _{Channel} | | |

7 Conducted receiver characteristics

7.1 General

Unless otherwise stated the receiver characteristics are specified at the antenna connector(s) of the UE. For UE(s) with an integral antenna only, a reference antenna(s) with a gain of 0 dBi is assumed for each antenna port(s). UE with an integral antenna(s) may be taken into account by converting these power levels into field strength requirements, assuming a 0 dBi gain antenna. For UEs with more than one receiver antenna connector, identical interfering signals shall be applied to each receiver antenna port if more than one of these is used (diversity).

The levels of the test signal applied to each of the antenna connectors shall be as defined in the respective clauses below.

With the exception of clause 7.3, the requirements shall be verified with the network signalling value NS_01 configured in Table 6.2.3.1-1.

All requirements in this section are applicable to devices supporting GSO and/or NGSO satellites.

All the parameters in clause 7 are defined using the UL reference measurement channels specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.2.2, the DL reference measurement channels specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.3.2 and using the set-up specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex C.3.1.

All Rx requirements are verified with default Tx-Rx separation specified in Table 5.4.4-1. Additional Tx-Rx frequency separations specified in clause 7.3.2 do not apply to other requirements.

7.2 Diversity characteristics

The UE is required to be equipped with a minimum of two RX antenna ports in all operating bands.

The UE shall be verified with two RX antenna ports in all supported frequency bands.

The above rules apply for all clauses with the exception of clause 7.9.

7.3 Reference sensitivity

7.3.1 General

The reference sensitivity power level REFSENS is the minimum mean power applied to each one of the UE antenna ports for all UE categories, at which the throughput shall meet or exceed the requirements for the specified reference measurement channel.

In later clauses of Clause 7 where the value of REFSENS is used as a reference to set the corresponding requirement:

- In all bands, the UE shall be verified against those requirements by applying the REFSENS value in Table 7.3.2-

7.3.2 Reference sensitivity power level

The throughput shall be ≥ 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annex A3.2.2 of 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5], with parameters specified in Table 7.3.2-1.

Table 7.3.2-1: Two antenna port reference sensitivity QPSK PREFSENS for FDD bands

| | Operating band / SCS / Channel bandwidth | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|--|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Operating Band | SCS kHz | 5 MHz (dBm) | 10 MHz (dBm) | 15 MHz (dBm) | 20 MHz (dBm) | 25 MHz (dBm) | 30 MHz (dBm) | 35 MHz (dBm) | 40 MHz (dBm) | 45 MHz (dBm) | 50 MHz (dBm) |
| | 15 | -99.5 | -96.3 | -94.5 | -93.3 | | | | | | |
| n256 | 30 | | -96.6 | -94.6 | -93.5 | | | | | | |
| | 60 | | -97.0 | -94.9 | -93.7 | | | | | | |
| | 15 | -100.0 | -96.8 | -95.0 | -93.8 | | | | | | |
| n255 | 30 | | -97.1 | -95.1 | -94.0 | | | | | | |
| | 60 | | -97.5 | -95.4 | -94.2 | | | | | | |
| | 15 | -99.5 | -96.3 | -94.5 | | | | | | | |
| n254 | 30 | | -96.6 | -94.6 | | | | | | | |
| | 60 | | -97.0 | -94.9 | | | | | | | |
| NOTE: The | transmit | ter shall b | e set to l | D _{UMAX} as | defined in | clause 6 | .2.4 of 30 | PP TS 3 | 8.101-1 [5 | 5]. | |

The reference receiver sensitivity (REFSENS) requirement specified in Table 7.3.2-1 shall be met with uplink transmission bandwidth less than or equal to that specified in Table 7.3.2-2 and with default Tx-Rx carrier center frequency separation except for cases specified in Table 7.3.2-3.

Table 7.3.2-2: Uplink configuration for reference sensitivity

| Operating band / SCS (kHz) / Channel bandwidth (MHz) / Duplex mode | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|----|----|----|-----------------|-------------|--|
| Operating Band | scs | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 | Duplex Mode | |
| | 15 | 25 | 50 | 75 | 100 | | |
| n256 | 30 | | 24 | 36 | 50 | FDD | |
| | 60 | | 10 | 18 | 24 | | |
| | 15 | 25 | 50 | 75 | 75 ² | | |
| | | | | | 50^{3} | | |
| n255 | 30 | | 24 | 36 | 36 ² | FDD | |
| | | | | | 24 ³ | | |
| | 60 | | 10 | 18 | 18 ² | | |
| | | | | | 10 ³ | | |
| | 15 | 25 | 50 | 75 | | | |
| n254 | 30 | | 24 | 36 | | FDD | |
| | 60 | | 10 | 18 | | | |

NOTE: UL resource blocks shall be located as close as possible to the downlink operating band but confined within the transmission bandwidth configuration for the channel bandwidth in Table 5.3.2-1.

Table 7.3.2-3: TX – RX carrier centre frequency separation for REFSENS verification

| Operating Band | Channel bandwidth | TX – RX carrier centre frequency separation for REFSENS verification |
|----------------|-------------------|--|
| n256 | 5 MHz | 165 MHz, 215 MHz |
| | 20 MHz | 180 MHz, 200 MHz |
| n255 | 5 MHz | -72.5 MHz, -130.5 MHz |
| | 20 MHz | -87.5 MHz, -115.5 MHz |

The minimum requirements specified in Table 7.3.2-1 shall be verified with the network signalling value NS_01 configured in Table 6.2.3.1-1.

7.4 Maximum input level

Maximum input level is defined as the maximum mean power received at the UE antenna port, at which the specified relative throughput shall meet or exceed the minimum requirements for the specified reference measurement channel. The throughput shall be ≥ 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD as described in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 7.4-1.

Table 7.4-1: Maximum input level

| Rx Parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth (MHz) 5, 10, 15, 20 |
|---|-------|---------------------------------------|
| Power in Transmission Bandwidth Configuration ³ | dBm | -40 ² |

NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to 4 dB below P_{CMAX_L,f,c} at the minimum uplink configuration specified in Table 7.3.2-2 with P_{CMAX_L,f,c} as defined in clause 6.2.4.

NOTE 2: Reference measurement channel is specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.3.2.3 for 64

NOTE 3: Power in transmission bandwidth configuration value is rounded to the nearest 0.5dB value.

7.5 Adjacent channel selectivity

Adjacent channel selectivity (ACS) is a measure of a receiver's ability to receive an NR signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an adjacent channel signal at a given frequency offset from the centre frequency of the assigned channel. ACS is the ratio of the receive filter attenuation on the assigned channel frequency to the receive filter attenuation on the adjacent channel(s).

In Release 17, only frequency bands below 2.7GHz are considered. The NR satellite UE shall fulfil the minimum requirements specified in Table 7.5-1 for NR satellite bands with FDL_high < 2700 MHz and FUL_high < 2700 MHz. These requirements apply for all values of an adjacent channel interferer in case 1 and for any SCS specified for the channel bandwidth of the wanted signal. The lower and upper range of test parameters are chosen as in Table 7.5-2 and Table 7.5-3 for verification of the requirements specified in Table 7.5-1. For these test parameters, the throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annexes A.2.2 and A.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.5.1.1).

Table 7.5-1: ACS for NR satellite bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz

| RX parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | |
|-----------------|--------|-------------------------|----|----|--|
| | Ullits | 5, 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| ACS | dB | 33 | 30 | 27 | |

Table 7.5-2: Test parameters for NR bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz, case 1

| DV noromotor | Units | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | | |
|---|-------|--|-------------------|----------------|--|--|
| RX parameter | Units | 5, 10 | 15 | 20 | | |
| Power in transmission bandwidth configuration | dBm | REFSENS + 14 dB | | | | |
| Pinterferer ⁴ | dBm | REFSENS + 45.5 dB | REFSENS + 42.5 dB | REFSENS + 39.5 | | |
| BWinterferer | MHz | 5 | | | | |
| F _{interferer} (offset) ² | MHz | BWChannel /2 + 2.5 / -(BWChannel /2 + 2.5) | | | | |

- NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to 4 dB below P_{CMAX_L,f,c} at the minimum UL configuration specified in clause 7.3.2 with P_{CMAX_L,f,c} defined in clause 6.2.4.
- NOTE 2: The absolute value of the interferer offset F_{interferer} (offset) shall be further adjusted to $(|F_{interferer}| / SCS | + 0.5) SCS |$ MHz with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wanted signal in MHz. The interferer is an NR signal with 15 kHz SCS.
- NOTE 3: The interferer consists of the NR interferer RMC specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.3.2.2 with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.5.1.1.
- NOTE 4: Pinterferer shall be rounded to the next higher 0.5dB value.

Table 7.5-3: Test parameters for NR bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz, case 2

| DV noromotor | Unito | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | |
|---|-------|--|-------|-------|--|
| RX parameter | Units | 5, 10 | 15 | 20 | |
| Power in transmission bandwidth configuration | dBm | -71.5 | -68.5 | -65.5 | |
| Pinterferer | dBm | -40 | | | |
| BWinterferer | MHz | 5 | | | |
| F _{interferer} (offset) | MHz | BWChannel /2 + 2.5 / -(BWChannel /2 + 2.5) | | | |

- NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to 24 dB below P_{CMAX_L,f,c} at the minimum UL configuration specified in clause 7.3.2 with P_{CMAX_L,f,c} defined in clause 6.2.4.
- NOTE 2: The absolute value of the interferer offset $F_{interferer}$ (offset) shall be further adjusted to $(|F_{interferer}| / SCS | + 0.5) SCS | MHz$ with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wanted signal in MHz. The interferer is an NR signal with 15 kHz SCS.
- NOTE 3: The interferer consists of the NR interferer RMC specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.3.2.2 with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.5.1.1.
- NOTE 4: Pinterferer shall be rounded to the next higher 0.5dB value.

7.6 Blocking characteristics

7.6.1 General

The blocking characteristic is a measure of the receiver's ability to receive a wanted signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an unwanted interferer on frequencies other than those of the spurious response or the adjacent channels, without this unwanted input signal causing a degradation of the performance of the receiver beyond a specified limit. The blocking performance shall apply at all frequencies except those at which a spurious response occurs.

7.6.2 In-band blocking

For NR satellite bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz in-band blocking (IBB) is defined for an unwanted interfering signal falling into the UE receive band or into the first 15 MHz below or above the UE receive band.

The throughput of the wanted signal shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annexes A.2.2 and A.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 7.6.2-1 and Table 7.6.2-2. The relative throughput requirement shall be met for any SCS specified for the channel bandwidth of the wanted signal.

Table 7.6.2-1: In-band blocking parameters for NR satellite bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz

| RX parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | | | |
|---|-------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|--|--|
| | | 5, 10 | 15 | 20 | | | |
| Power in transmission bandwidth configuration ³ | dBm | REFSENS + 6 dB | REFSENS + 7 dB | REFSENS + 9 dB | | | |
| BW _{interferer} | MHz | 5 | | | | | |
| Floffset, case 1 | MHz | 7.5 | | | | | |
| Floffset, case 2 | MHz | | 12.5 | | | | |

NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to 4 dB below P_{CMAX_L,f,c} at the minimum UL configuration specified in clause 7.3.2 with P_{CMAX_L,f,c} defined in clause 6.2.4.

NOTE 2: The interferer consists of the RMC specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex A.3.2.2 with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1 and 15 kHz SCS.

NOTE 3: Power in transmission bandwidth configuration shall be rounded to the next higher 0.5dB value.

Table 7.6.2-2: In-band blocking for NR satellite bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz

| Operating | Parameter | Unit | Case 1 | Case 2 |
|-----------|----------------------|------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Band | | | | |
| | Pinterferer | dBm | -56 | -44 |
| n254, | Finterferer (offset) | MHz | -BW _{Channel} /2 - | ≤ -BW _{Channel} /2 - |
| n255, | | | Floffset, case 1 | Floffset, case 2 |
| n256 | | | and | and |
| | | | BW _{Channel} /2 + | ≥ BW _{Channel} /2 + |
| | | | Floffset, case 1 | Floffset, case 2 |
| | Finterferer | MHz | NOTE 2 | F _{DL_low} – 15 |
| | | | | to |
| | | | | FDL high + 15 |

NOTE 1: The absolute value of the interferer offset F_{interferer} (offset) shall be further adjusted to $(|F_{interferer}| / SCS | + 0.5) SCS |$ MHz with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wanted signal in MHz. The interferer is an NR signal with 15 kHz SCS.

NOTE 2: For each carrier frequency, the requirement applies for two interferer carrier frequencies: a: -BW_{Channel}/2 - Floffset, case 1; b: BW_{Channel}/2 + Floffset, case 1

7.6.3 Out-of-band blocking

For NR satellite bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz out-of-band band blocking is defined for an unwanted CW interfering signal falling outside a frequency range 15 MHz below or above the UE receive band.

The throughput of the wanted signal shall be \geq 95% of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annexes A.2.2 and A.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 7.6.3-1 and Table 7.6.3-2. The relative throughput requirement shall be met for any SCS specified for the channel bandwidth of the wanted signal.

Table 7.6.3-1: Out-of-band blocking parameters for NR satellite bands with FDL_high < 2700 MHz and $F_{UL\ high} < 2700\ MHz$

| RX parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | | |
|--|-------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|--|
| | | 5, 10 | 15 | 20 | | |
| Power in transmission bandwidth configuration ² | dBm | REFSENS + 6 dB | REFSENS + 7 dB | REFSENS + 9 dB | | |

NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to 4 dB below PCMAX L.f.c at the minimum UL configuration specified in clause 7.3.2 with P_{CMAX} L_{f,c} defined in clause 6.2.4.

NOTE 2: Power in transmission bandwidth configuration shall be rounded to the next higher 0.5dB value.

Table 7.6.3-2: Out of-band blocking for NR satellite bands with FDL_high < 2700 MHz and FUL_high < 2700 MHz

| Operating Band | Parameter | Unit | Range 1 | Range 2 | Range 3 |
|-------------------|------------------------------|------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| | Pinterferer | dBm | -44 | -30 | -15 |
| n254 ² | Finterferer (CW) | MHz | $-60 < f - F_{DL_{low}} < -15$ | $-85 < f - F_{DL_{low}} \le -60$ | $1 \le f \le F_{DL_low} - 85$ |
| | | | or | or | or |
| | | | $15 < f - F_{DL_high} < 60$ | $60 \le f - F_{DL_high} < 85$ | F _{DL_high} + 85 ≤ f |
| | | | | | ≤ 12750 |
| n255 | Finterferer (CW) | MHz | $-60 < f - F_{DL_{low}} < -15$ | $-85 < f - F_{DL_{low}} \le -60$ | $1 \le f \le F_{DL_low} - 85$ |
| | | | or | or | or |
| | | | $15 < f - F_{DL_high} < 60$ | $60 \le f - F_{DL_high} < 85$ | F _{DL_high} + 85 ≤ f |
| | | | | | ≤ 12750 |
| n256 ¹ | F _{interferer} (CW) | MHz | $-100 < f - F_{DL_{low}} < -$ | -145 < f − F _{DL_low} ≤ - | $1 \le f \le F_{DL_low} - 145$ |
| | | | 15 | 100 | or |
| | | | or | or | F _{DL_high} + 85 ≤ f |
| | | | $15 < f - F_{DL_high} < 60$ | $60 \le f - F_{DL_high} < 85$ | ≤ 12750 |

NOTE 1: Band n256 lower frequency ranges are modified to enable specific implementations

Band n254 power level of the interferer (Pinterferer) for Range 3 shall be modified to -20 dBm for Finterferer

> 2585 MHz and FInterferer < 2775 MHz.

NOTE 3: <u>NO</u>TE 4: void

For interferer frequencies across ranges 1, 2 and 3 in Table 7.6.3-1, a maximum of

$$|\max\{24,6\cdot \lceil n\cdot N_{RR} / 6\rceil\}/\min\{|n\cdot N_{RR} / 10|,5\}|$$

exceptions are allowed for spurious response frequencies in each assigned frequency channel when measured using a step size of $min([BW_{channel}/2], 5)$ MHz with N_{RB} the number of resource blocks in the downlink transmission bandwidth configuration, BW_{Channel} the bandwidth of the frequency channel in MHz and n = 1, 2, 3 for SCS = 15, 30, 60 kHz, respectively. For these exceptions, the requirements in clause 7.7 apply.

7.6.4 Narrow band blocking

This requirement is measure of a receiver's ability to receive a NR signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an unwanted narrow band CW interferer at a frequency, which is less than the nominal channel spacing. The relative throughput shall be ≥ 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annexes A.2.2 and A.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 7.6.4-1.

Table 7.6.4-1: Narrow Band Blocking

| Operating Band | Parameter | Unit | | Channel Ban | dwidth (MHz) | |
|------------------------|---|------|---|---|-------------------------------|----|
| | | | 5 | 10 | 15 | 20 |
| n254, n255, n256 | Pw | dBm | P _{REFSENS} + channel-bandwidth specific value below | | | |
| | | | 16 | 13 | 14 | 16 |
| | Puw (CW) | dBm | | -5 | 55 | |
| | F _{uw} (offset SCS= 15 kHz) | MHz | | $\left(\frac{\frac{BW_{Channel}}{2} + 0.2}{SCS}\right)$ | $\frac{1}{1000} + 0.5 + 0.5 $ | |
| | F _{uw} (offset SCS= 30 kHz) ³ | MHz | | N | IA | |

NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set a 4 dB below P_{CMAX_L,f,c} at the minimum UL configuration specified in clause

7.3.2 with P_{CMAX_L,f,c} defined in clause 6.2.4

NOTE 2: The Prefsens power level is specified in clause 7.3.2.

NOTE 3: Fuw shall be rounded to half of SCS.

7.7 Spurious response

Spurious response is a measure of the ability of the receiver to receive a wanted signal on its assigned channel frequency without exceeding a given degradation due to the presence of an unwanted CW interfering signal at any other frequency for which a response is obtained, i.e. for which the out-of-band blocking limit as specified in clause 7.6.3 is not met.

The throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annexes A.2.2 and A.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters for the wanted signal as specified in Table 7.7-1 for NR bands with $F_{DL_high} < 2700$ MHz and $F_{UL_high} < 2700$ MHz for the interferer as specified in Table 7.7-2. The relative throughput requirement shall be met for any SCS specified for the channel bandwidth of the wanted signal.

Table 7.7-1: Spurious response parameters for NR bands with F_{DL_high} < 2700 MHz and F_{UL_high} < 2700 MHz

| RX parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | | | Channel bandwidth (MHz) | | | | |
|---|-------|-------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|--|-------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| | | 5, 10 | 15 | 20 | | | | | | | |
| Power in transmission bandwidth configuration ² | dBm | REFSENS + 6 dB | REFSENS + 7 dB | REFSENS + 9 dB | | | | | | | |

NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to 4 dB below P_{CMAX_L,f,c} at the minimum UL configuration specified in Table 7.3.2-3 with P_{CMAX_L,f,c} defined in clause 6.2.4.

NOTE 2: Power in transmission bandwidth configuration value is rounded to the next higher 0.5dB value.

Table 7.7-2: Spurious response

| Parameter | Unit | Level |
|-------------------------|------|-------------------------------|
| PInterferer (CW) | dBm | -44 |
| F _{Interferer} | MHz | Spurious response frequencies |

7.8 Intermodulation characteristics

The definition and requirements for intermodulation characteristics specified in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] clause 7.8 shall apply for NTN satellite UE.

7.9 Spurious emissions

The spurious emissions power is the power of emissions generated or amplified in a receiver that appear at the UE antenna connector.

The power of any narrow band CW spurious emission shall not exceed the maximum level specified in Table 7.9-1

Table 7.9-1: General receiver spurious emission requirements

| Frequency range | Measurement bandwidth | Maximum level | NOTE | | |
|--|-----------------------|------------------|------|--|--|
| 30 MHz ≤ f < 1 GHz | 100 kHz | -57 dBm | | | |
| 1 GHz ≤ f ≤ 12.75 GHz | 1 MHz | -47 dBm | | | |
| NOTE: Unused PDCCH resources are padded with resource element groups with power level given by PDCCH as defined in 3GPP TS 38.101-1 [5] Annex C.3.1. | | | | | |

8 Conducted performance requirements

8.1 General

8.1.1 Relationship between minimum requirements and test requirements

The present document is a Single-RAT specification for NR UE, covering minimum performance requirements of both conducted and radiated requirements. Conformance to the present specification is demonstrated by fulfilling the test requirements specified in the conformance specification 3GPP TS 38.521-5 [2].

The Minimum Requirements given in this specification make no allowance for measurement uncertainty. The test specification 3GPP TS 38.521-5 [2]. defines test tolerances. These test tolerances are individually calculated for each test. The test tolerances are used to relax the minimum requirements in this specification to create test requirements.

The measurement results returned by the test system are compared – without any modification – against the test requirements as defined by the shared risk principle.

The shared risk principle is defined in Recommendation ITU-R M.1545 [3].

The applicability of each requirement is described under clause in 8.2.1.

8.1.2 Applicability of minimum requirements

The conducted minimum requirements specified in this specification shall be met in all applicable scenarios for FR1.

Unless otherwise stated, all minimum performance requirements defined in Clauses 8 are applicable to UE power class 3 only.

8.1.3 Conducted requirements

8.1.3.1 Introduction

The requirements are defined for the following modes:

- Mode 1: Conditions with external noise source
 - Wanted signal with power level Es is transmitted.
 - External white noise source with power spectral density Noc is used.
 - Es and Noc levels are selected to achieve target SNR as described in Clause 8.1.3.3.

8.1.3.2 Reference point

The reference point for SNR, Es and Noc of DL signal is the UE antenna connector or connectors.

8.1.3.3 SNR definition

For Mode 1 conditions conducted UE demodulation and CSI requirements the SNR is defined as:

$$SNR = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N_{RX}} E_s^{(j)}}{\sum_{j=1}^{N_{RX}} N_{oc}^{(j)}}$$

Where

- N_{RX} denotes the number of receiver antenna connectors and the superscript receiver antenna connector j.
- The above SNR definition assumes that the REs are not precoded, and does not account for any gain which can be associated to the precoding operation.
- Unless otherwise stated, the SNR refers to the SSS wanted signal.
- The downlink SSS transmit power is defined as the linear average over the power contributions in [W] of all resource elements that carry the SSS within the operating system bandwidth.
- The power ratio of other wanted signals to the SSS is defined in clause [C.3.1].

8.1.3.4 Noc

8.1.3.4.1 Introduction

This clause describes the Noc power level for Mode 1 conditions conducted testing of demodulation and CSI requirements.

8.1.3.4.2 Noc for NR operating bands in FR1

The Noc power spectrum density shall be larger or equal to the minimum Noc power level for each operating band supported by the UE as defined in clause 8.1.3.4.2.1.

Unless otherwise stated, a fixed Noc power level of -145 dBm/Hz shall be used for all operating bands.

8.1.3.4.2.1 Derivation of Noc values for NR operating bands in FR1

The minimum Noc power level for an operating band, subcarrier spacing and channel bandwidth is derived based on the following equation:

 $Noc_{Band_X,\ SCS_Y,\ CBW_Z} = REFSENS_{Band_X,\ SCS_Y,\ CBW_Z} - 10*log10(12*SCS_Y*nPRB) + D - SNR_{REFSENS} + \Delta_{thermal} +$

where

- REFSENS_{Band_X, SCS_Y, CBW_Z} is the REFSENS value in dBm for Band X, SCS Y and CBW Z specified in Table 7.3.2-1.
- 12 is the number of subcarriers in a PRB
- SCS Y is the subcarrier spacing associated with the REFSENS value
- nPRB is the maximum number of PRB for SCS Y and CBW Z associated with the REFSENS value, and is specified in Table 5.3.2-1.
- D is diversity gain equal to 3 dB
- SNR_{REFSENS} = -1 dB is the SNR used for simulation of REFSENS

- Δ_{thermal} is the amount of dB that the wanted noise is set above UE thermal noise, giving a defined rise in total noise. $\Delta_{\text{thermal}} = 16\text{dB}$, giving a rise in total noise of 0.1dB, regarded as insignificant.

The calculated Noc value for the baseline of Band n256, 15 kHz SCS, 10 MHz CBW is -146.5 dBm/Hz.

An allowance of 1.5dB is made for future bands, giving an Noc power level of -145 dBm/Hz.

8.2 Demodulation performance requirements

8.2.1 General

8.2.1.1 Applicability of requirements

8.2.1.1.1 General

The minimum performance requirements are applicable to all FR1 operating bands defined in clause 5.2.

If same test is listed for different UE features/capabilities in Clauses 8.2.1.1.2, then this test shall apply for UEs which support all corresponding UE features/capabilities.

8.2.1.1.2 Applicability of requirements for optional UE features

The performance requirements in Table 8.2.1.1.2-1 shall apply for UEs which support optional UE features only.

Table 8.2.1.1.2-1: Requirements applicability for optional UE features

| UE feature/capability [TBD] | Test t | type | Test list | Applicability notes | | |
|--|---------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| NR NTN access (nonTerrestrialNetwork-r17) | FR1 FDD | PDSCH | Clause 8.2.1.2.2.1 (Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3, Test 1-4) | | | |
| NR NTN scenario support (ntn- ScenarioSupport-r17) | FR1 FDD | PDSCH | Clause 8.2.1.2.2.1 (Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3, Test 1-4) | The requirements apply only when ntn-ScenarioSupport-r17 is "ngso" or is not configured. | | |
| Increasing the number of HARQ processes (max-HARQ-ProcessNumber-r17) | FR1 FDD | PDSCH | Clause 8.2.1.2.2.1 (Test 1-3) | | | |
| Disabled HARQ feedback for downlink transmission (harq-FeedbackDisabled-r17) | FR1 FDD | PDSCH | Clause 8.2.1.2.2.1 (Test 1-4) | | | |
| | , | | | | | |

8.2.1.2 PDSCH demodulation requirements

The parameters specified in Table 8.2.1.2-1 are valid for all PDSCH tests unless otherwise stated.

Table 8.2.1.2-1: Common test parameters

| | Parameter | Unit | Value |
|-----------------------------------|--|----------|--|
| PDSCH transmission | scheme | | Transmission scheme 1 |
| Carrier | Offset between Point A and the lowest usable subcarrier on this carrier (Note 2) | RBs | 0 |
| configuration | Subcarrier spacing | kHz | 15 |
| | Cyclic prefix | | Normal |
| | RB offset | RBs | 0 |
| DL BWP configuration #1 | Number of contiguous PRB | PRBs | Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration as specified in clause 5.3.2 of TS 38.101-1 [6] for tested channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing |
| Common serving | Physical Cell ID | | 0 |
| cell parameters | SSB position in burst | | First SSB in Slot #0 |
| cell parameters | SSB periodicity | ms | 20 |
| | Slots for PDCCH monitoring | | Each slot |
| | Symbols with PDCCH | Symbols | 0, 1 |
| | Number of PRBs in CORESET | | Table 5.2-2 of 38.101-4 for tested channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing |
| DDCCH | Number of PDCCH candidates and aggregation levels | | 1/AL8 |
| PDCCH | CCE-to-REG mapping type | | Non-interleaved |
| configuration | DCI format | | 1_1 |
| | TCI state | | TCI state #1 |
| | PDCCH & PDCCH DMRS Precoding configuration | | Single Panel Type I, Random per slot with equal probability of each applicable i ₁ , i ₂ combination, and with REG bundling granularity for number of Tx larger than 1 |
| Cross carrier schedu | | | Not configured |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | k ₀ =0 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | I_0 = 6 for CSI-RS resource 1 and 3 I_0 = 10 for CSI-RS resource 2 and 4 |
| | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) | | 1 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| | CDM Type | | 'No CDM' for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| | Density (ρ) | | 3 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| CSI-RS for tracking | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 15 kHz SCS: 20 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 15 kHz SCS: 10 for CSI-RS resource 1 and 2 11 for CSI-RS resource 3 and 4 |
| | Frequency Occupation | | Start PRB 0 Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 |
| | QCL info | _ | TCI state #0 |
| | Row index (Note 3) | | 3 for 2 CSI-RS ports and 5 for 4 CSI- RS ports |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | k ₀ = 0 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | I ₀ = 12 |
| | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) | | Same as number of transmit antenna |
| NZP CSI-RS for CSI acquisition | СDМ Туре | | 'No CDM' for 1 transmit antenna 'FD-CDM2' for 2 and 4 transmit antenna |
| | Density (ρ) | | 1 |
| | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 15 kHz SCS: 20 |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 0 |
| | Frequency Occupation | | Start PRB 0 Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 |
| | QCL info | 1 | TCI state #1 |
| | Row index (Note 3) | | 5 |
| ZP CSI-RS for CSI acquisition | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | k ₀ = 4 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | I ₀ = 12 |

| | Number of CSI | -RS ports (X) | | 4 | |
|---|---|-------------------------------|--------------|---|--|
| | CDM Type | porto (/ t) | | 'FD-CDM2' | |
| | Density (ρ) | | | 1 | |
| | CSI-RS periodi | city | Slots | 15 kHz SCS: 20 | |
| | CSI-RS offset | City | Slots | 0 | |
| | | | 0.00 | Start PRB 0 | |
| | Frequency Occ | cupation | | Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 | |
| | Antenna ports | indexes | | {1000} for Rank 1 tests | |
| DD0011 D14D0 | | first DMRS for PDSCH | | , , | |
| PDSCH DMRS | mapping type A | | | 2 | |
| configuration | Number of PDS | SCH DMRS CDM group(s) | | 44 5 44 | |
| | without data | 3 1(, | | 1 for Rank 1 | |
| | Type 1 QCL | SSB index | | SSB #0 | |
| TCI -4-4- #0 | information | QCL Type | | Type C | |
| TCI state #0 | Type 2 QCL | SSB index | | N/A | |
| | information | QCL Type | | N/A | |
| | Type 1 OCL | CSI-RS resource | | CSI-RS resource 1 from 'CSI-RS for | |
| | Type 1 QCL information | CSI-RS resource | | tracking' configuration | |
| TCI state #1 | | QCL Type | | Type A | |
| | Type 2 QCL | CSI-RS resource | | N/A | |
| information | | QCL Type | | N/A | |
| PT-RS configuration | | | | PT-RS is not configured | |
| | | os for ACK/NACK feedback | | 1 | |
| Maximum number of | | sion | | 4 | |
| HARQ ACK/NACK b | undling | | | Multiplexed | |
| Redundancy version | coding sequence | Э | | {0,2,3,1} | |
| | | | | Single Panel Type I, Random | |
| | | | | precoder selection updated per slot, | |
| PDSCH & PDSCH D | MRS Precoding | configuration | | with equal probability of each | |
| | | | | applicable i1, i2 combination, and with | |
| | | | | PRB bundling granularity | |
| Symbols for all unused PEs | | | | OP.1 FDD as defined in Annex | |
| Cymbols for all unus | Symbols for all unused REs | | | A.5.1.1 of 38.101-4 | |
| Physical signals, channels mapping and precoding | | | | As specified in Annex B.4.1 of 38.101- | |
| Note 1: UE assum transmiss | | tate for the PDSCH is identic | al to the TC | CI state applied for the PDCCH | |
| Note 2: Point A coincides with minimum guard band as specified in Table 5.3.3-1 from TS 38.101-1 [6] for tested | | | | | |
| channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing. | | | | | |
| | Note 2: Defer to Toble 7.4.1.5.2.4 is [0] | | | | |

Note 3: Refer to Table 7.4.1.5.3-1 in [9]

8.2.1.2.1 1RX requirements

8.2.1.2.2 2RX requirements

8.2.1.2.2.1 FDD

8.2.1.2.2.1.1 Minimum requirements for PDSCH Mapping Type A

The performance requirements are specified in Table 8.2.1.2.2.1.1-3 with the addition of test parameters in Table 8.2.1.2.2.1.1-2 and the downlink physical channel setup according to Annex C.3.1.

The test purposes are specified in Table 8.2.1.2.2.1.1-1.

Table 8.2.1.2.2.1.1-1: Tests purpose

| Purpose | Test index |
|---|--------------------|
| Verify the PDSCH mapping Type A normal performance | 1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 1-4 |
| under 2 receive antenna conditions and with different | |
| channel models and MCS | |

Table 8.2.1.2.2.1.1-2: Test parameters

| | Parameter | Unit | Value |
|---|---|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| Duplex mode | | | FDD |
| Active DL BWP index | X | | 1 |
| PDSCH | Mapping type | | Type A |
| configuration | 5 7. | | |
| | k0 | | 0 |
| | Starting symbol (S) | | 2 |
| | Length (L) | | 12 |
| | PDSCH aggregation factor | | 1 |
| | PRB bundling type | | Static |
| | PRB bundling size | | 2 |
| | Resource allocation type | | Type 0 |
| | RBG size | | Config2 |
| | VRB-to-PRB mapping type | | Non-interleaved |
| | VRB-to-PRB mapping interleaver bundle | | N/A |
| | size | | |
| PDSCH DMRS | DMRS Type | | Type 1 |
| configuration | 71 | | 31 |
| 9 | Number of additional DMRS | | 1 |
| | Maximum number of OFDM symbols for | | 1 |
| | DL front loaded DMRS | | |
| CSI-RS for tracking | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 20 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4. |
| | | | |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 10 for CSI-RS resource 1 and 2 |
| | | | 11 for CSI-RS resource 3 and 4. |
| Number of HARQ Pr | ocesses | | 16 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2 |
| | | | 32 for Test 1-3 |
| | | | 4 with feedback disabled, 12 with |
| | | | feedback enabled in 16 HARQ |
| | | | processes with re-Tx disable for all |
| | | | HARQ for Test 1-4 in which 4 |
| | | | disabled processes are randomly |
| The musels an of -1-4- | hatusan DDCCII and assurance states | | select at test configuration |
| | between PDSCH and corresponding | | 10 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3 |
| HARQ-ACK informat cellSpecificKoffset-ra | | Slots/15kHz | N/A for Test 1-4 8 |
| Maximum number of | ` ' | SIUIS/ I SKMZ | 4 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3 |
| iviaximum number of | HANG HANSINISSION | | Disabled for all HARQ processes |
| | | | for Test 1-4 |
| Note 1: The numb | er of slots between PDSCH and correspond | ling HARO-ACK | |
| | ified by <i>cellSpecificKoffset-r17</i> . | ing HARQ-ACT | Chinomiation contains the number of |
| Siots spec | med by cenopecinchonseri ii. | | |

Table 8.2.1.2.2.1.1-3: Minimum performance for Rank 1

| Test num. | Reference channel | Bandwidth (MHz) / Subcarrier spacing (kHz) | Modulation format and code rate | Propagation condition | Correlation matrix and antenna configuration | Reference v | alue |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|--------------------------|---|------------------------------------|-------------|
| | | | | | | Fraction of maximum throughput (%) | SNR (dB) |
| 1-1 | R.PDSCH.1-1.1 FDD | 10 / 15 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN- TDLA100-200 | 1x2, ULA Low | 70 | 0.3 |
| 1-2 | R.PDSCH.1-2.1 FDD | 10 / 15 | 16QAM, 0.48 | NTN-TDLC5- 200 | 1x2, ULA Low | 70 | 7.6 |
| 1-3 | R.PDSCH.1-1.1 FDD | 10 / 15 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 200 | 1x2, ULA Low | 70 | -0.4 |
| 1-4 | R.PDSCH.1-1.1 FDD ⁽¹⁾ | 10 / 15 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN- TDLA100-200 | 1x2, ULA Low | 70 | 1.1 |

8.3 CSI reporting requirements

[To be updated]

9 Radiated transmitter characteristics

9.1 General

Unless otherwise stated, the transmitter characteristics are specified over the air (OTA) with a single or multiple transmit chains under either LHCP (Left Hand Circular Polarization) or RHCP (Right Hand Circular Polarization) or Linear Polarization.

9.2 Transmitter power

9.2.1 NTN VSAT maximum output power

9.2.1.0 General

The NTN VSAT classes are specified based on the assumptions of certain NTN VSAT types with specific device architectures including antenna beam steering types. The requirements are specified for different NTN VSAT types. For the hybrid beam steering capable NTN VSAT, which can adjust its antenna(s) or beam(s) in both electronic steering and mechanical steering ways, the applicable requirements shall follow either electronic or mechanical beam steering requirements depending on the NTN VSAT type it declared. The NTN VSAT types are specified in Table 9.2.1.0-1 below.

Table 9.2.1.0-1: The definitions of NTN VSAT Types

| NTN VSAT class | NTN VSAT | Type description | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|---|--|--|
| | type | | | |
| Fixed VSAT | 1 | Fixed VSAT communicating with GSO and LEO with mechanical steering antenna. | | |
| | 2 ² | Fixed VSAT communicating with GSO and LEO with electronic steering antenna. | | |
| | 3 | Fixed VSAT communicating with LEO only with electronic steering antenna. | | |
| Mobile VSAT | 4 | Mobile VSAT communicating with GSO with mechanical steering antenna. | | |
| | 5 ² | Mobile VSAT communicating with GSO with electronic steering antenna. | | |
| NOTE 4. The NIT | NI VOAT 4: | | | |

NOTE 1: The NTN VSAT types are assuming NTN VSAT has only one antenna beam towards one satellite at a given time in this release.

NOTE 2: NTN VSAT may need power reduction to comply with OFF-axis EIRP requirement defined in clause 9.2.2.

There is no requirement for the potential power reduction.

9.2.1.1 Minimum requirements for Fixed VSAT

The following requirements define the maximum output power radiated by the Fixed VSAT for any transmission bandwidth within the channel bandwidth for non-CA configuration, unless otherwise stated. The period of measurement shall be at least one sub frame (1ms). The minimum output power values for EIRP are specified in Table 9.2.1.1-1. The requirement should be verified with test metrics of EIRP (Link=Tx beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle). The peak EIRP of Tx beam peak direction should be verified within the declared minimum elevation angle supported for transmitting. The steered beam peak directions can be achieved by mechanical steering and/or electronic steering according to VSAT Type. Where the supported minimum elevation angle shall be declared by manufacturer and within the range of $3^{\circ} \le \text{minimum elevation angle} \le 75^{\circ}$, and it can be expressed as $(90-\theta)$ if the coordinate systems in Figure 9.2.1.1-1 below is taken as an example.

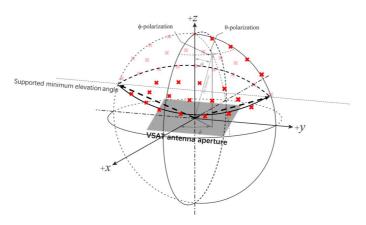


Figure 9.2.1.1-1 Example measurement grid for min peak EIRP with the declared supported minimum elevation angle

Table 9.2.1.1-1: Minimum peak EIRP for Fixed VSAT

| Operating band | UE Type | Min peak EIRP (dBm) | | | |
|----------------------|--|---------------------|--|--|--|
| n512, n511, n510 | 1 | 70 | | | |
| | 2 | 70 | | | |
| | 3 | 61 | | | |
| NOTE: Minimum peak E | IRP is defined as the lower limit without tolerance. | | | | |

The maximum output power values for TRP and EIRP for fixed VSAT are specified in Table 9.2.1.1-2 below.

Table 9.2.1.1-2: Maximum output power limits for Fixed VSAT

| Operating band | UE Type | TRP _{MAX} (dBm) | EIRP _{max} (dBm) |
|------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| n512, n511, n510 | 1 | 35 | 76.2 |
| | 2, 3 | 43 | 76.2 |
| NOTE: Maximu | m EIRP is defined usin | ng 13RBs allocation v | vith 120kHz SCS. |

9.2.1.2 Minimum requirements for Mobile VSAT

The following requirements define the maximum output power radiated by the Mobile VSAT for any transmission bandwidth within the channel bandwidth for non-CA configuration, unless otherwise stated. The period of measurement shall be at least one sub frame (1ms). The minimum output power values for EIRP are specified in Table 9.2.1.2-1. The requirement should be verified with test metrics of EIRP (Link=Tx beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

The peak EIRP of Tx beam peak direction should be verified within the declared minimum elevation angle supported for transmitting. The steered beam peak directions can be achieved by mechanical steering and/or electronic steering according to VSAT Type. Where the supported minimum elevation angle shall be declared by manufacturer and within the range of $3^{\circ} \le \text{minimum}$ elevation angle $\le 75^{\circ}$, and it can be expressed as $(90-\theta)$ if the coordinate systems in Figure 9.2.1.2-1 below is taken as an example.

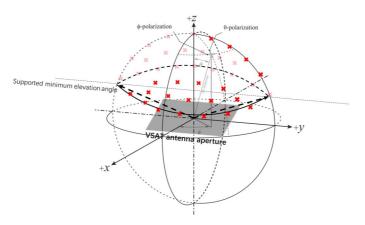


Figure 9.2.1.2-1 Example measurement grid for min peak EIRP with the declared supported minimum elevation angle

Table 9.2.1.2-1: Minimum peak EIRP for Mobile VSAT

| Opera | ating band | UE Type | Min peak EIRP (dBm) |
|--|------------|---------|---------------------|
| n5 | 12, n511 | 4 | 70 |
| | | 5 | 70 |
| NOTE: Minimum peak EIRP is defined as the lower limit without tolerance. | | | |

The maximum output power values for TRP and EIRP for mobile VSAT are specified in Table 9.2.1.2-2 below.

Table 9.2.1.2-2: Maximum output power limits for Mobile VSAT

| Operating band | UE Type | TRP _{MAX} (dBm) | EIRP _{max} (dBm) |
|------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| n512, n511, n510 | 4 | 35 | 76.2 |
| | 5 | 43 | 76.2 |
| NOTE: Maxim | um EIRP is defined usi | ng 13RBs allocation v | vith 120kHz SCS. |

9.2.2 Off-axis EIRP emission density limit within the operating band

9.2.2.1 General

The Off-axis EIRP density envelope is applicable within the band to NTN VSAT transmitting towards geostationary satellite orbit.

9.2.2.2 Minimum requirement for bands n510 and n511

For co-polarized transmissions in the plane tangent to the GSO arc, the requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.2-1 apply to NTN VSAT.

Table 9.2.2.2-1: Off-axis EIRP density limits for co-polarized transmissions in the plane tangent to the GSO arc

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2.0° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | 62.5 – $25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | 1 |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 41.5 | 1 |
| 9.2° ≤ θ ≤ 19.1° | $65.5 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | 1 |
| 19.1° < θ ≤ 180° | 33.5 | 1 |

For co-polarized transmissions in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc, the requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.2-2 apply to NTN VSAT.

Table 9.2.2.2-2: Off-axis EIRP density limits for co-polarized transmissions in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 3.5° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | $65.5 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | 1 |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 44.4 | 1 |
| 9.2° ≤ θ ≤ 19.1° | $68.5 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | 1 |
| 19.1° < θ ≤ 180° | 36.5 | 1 |

The EIRP density levels specified in Table 9.2.2.2-1 and Table 9.2.2.2-2 may be exceeded by up to 3 dB, for values of $\theta > 7^{\circ}$, over 10% of the range of theta (θ) angles from 7–180° on each side of the line from the NTN VSAT to the target SAN.

For cross-polarized transmissions in the plane tangent to the GSO arc and in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc, the requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.2-3 apply to NTN VSAT.

Table 9.2.2.2-2: Off-axis EIRP density limits for cross-polarized transmissions in the plane tangent to the GSO arc and in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|---------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2.0° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | $52.5 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | 1 |

9.2.2.3 Minimum requirement for band n512

9.2.2.3.1 Fixed VSAT

For co-polarized transmissions, the regional requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.3.1-1 apply to Fixed VSAT type 1 or 2 when transmitting towards satellites in geostationary orbit.

Table 9.2.2.3.1-1: Off-axis EIRP density limits for co-polarized transmissions

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (kHz) |
|----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1.8° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | 49 − 25log ₁₀ (θ) − K | 40 |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 28 – K | 40 |
| 9.2° ≤ θ ≤ 48° | $52 - 25\log_{10}(\theta) - K$ | 40 |
| 48° < θ | 20 – K | 40 |

NOTE: K=10log(N) with N the number of terminals simultaneously transmitting at the same EIRP on a given carrier frequency in the same measurement bandwidth. K = 0 if only one Fixed VSAT transmits at any one time on a given carrier frequency. See subclause 4.2.4.2 in [18]. The manufacturer shall declare the value of N.

For cross-polarized transmissions, the regional requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.3.1-2 apply to Fixed VSAT type 1 or 2 when transmitting towards satellites in geostationary orbit.

Table 9.2.2.3.1-2: Off-axis EIRP density limits for cross-polarized transmissions

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (kHz) |
|---|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1.8° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | $39 - 25\log_{10}(\theta) - K$ | 40 |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 18 – K | 40 |
| NOTE: K=10log(N) with N the number of terminals simultaneously transmitting at the same EIRP on a given carrier frequency in the same measurement bandwidth. K = 0 if only one Fixed VSAT transmits at any one time on a given carrier frequency. See subclause 4.2.4.2 in [18]. The manufacturer shall declare the value of N. | | idth. K = 0 if only ncy. See sub- |

9.2.2.3.2 Mobile VSAT

For co-polarized transmissions, the regional requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.3.2-1 apply to Mobile VSAT.

Table 9.2.2.3.2-1: Off-axis EIRP density limits for co-polarized transmissions

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (kHz) |
|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| 2.0° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | 49 – 25log ₁₀ (θ) – K | 40 |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 28 – K | 40 |
| 9.2° ≤ θ ≤ 48° | 52 – 25log ₁₀ (θ) – K | 40 |
| 48° < θ ≤ 180° | 20 – K | 40 |
| NOTE1: K-10log ₄₀ (N) with N the nun | oher of terminals simultaneously transmit | tting at the same |

NOTE1: K=10log₁₀(N) with N the number of terminals simultaneously transmitting at the same EIRP on a given carrier frequency in the same measurement bandwidth. K = 0 if only one Mobile VSAT transmits at any one time on a given carrier frequency. See subclause 4.2.2.2.1 in [17]. The manufacturer shall declare the value of N.

NOTE2: The manufacturer shall declare the operational conditions of the system e.g. motion of the platform with 6 degrees of freedom and the duration for which the limits will not be exceeded for more than 0,01% of the time.

Mobile VSAT with low elevation angles may exceed the limits specified in Table 9.2.2.3.2-1 by the amount specified in Table 9.2.2.3.2-2.

Table 9.2.2.3.2-2: Off-axis EIRP density limits for co-polarized transmissions

| Elevation angle to Satellite (ε) | Increase in EIRP density (dB) |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ε < 5° | 2.5 |
| 5° < ε < 30° | 3 – 0.1 * ε |

For cross-polarized transmissions, the regional requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.3.2-3 apply to Mobile VSAT.

Table 9.2.2.3.2-3: Off-axis EIRP density limits for cross-polarized transmissions

| θ value | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (kHz) |
|---------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2.0° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | $39 - 25\log_{10}(\theta) - K$ | 40 |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 18 – K | 40 |

NOTE 1: K=10log₁₀(N) with N the number of terminals simultaneously transmitting at the same EIRP on a given carrier frequency in the same measurement bandwidth. K = 0 if only one Mobile VSAT transmits at any one time on a given carrier frequency. See subclause 4.2.2.2.1 in [17]. The manufacturer shall declare the value of N.

NOTE 2: The manufacturer shall declare the operational conditions of the system e.g. motion of the platform with 6 degrees of freedom and the duration for which the requirement will not be exceeded for more than 0,01% of the time.

9.2.2.3.3 Additional Off-axis EIRP density requirements for protection of fixed services

For NTN VSAT, the regional requirements specified in Table 9.2.2.3.3-1 apply.

Table 9.2.2.3.3-1: Off-axis EIRP density limits for protection of fixed services

| Frequency Range (GHz) | Maximum Off-axis EIRP (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|--|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 27.8285 – 28.4445 | | |
| 28.8365 - 28.9485 (Note 1) | -5 | 1 |
| 28.9485 - 29.4525 | | |
| NOTE1: When applicable, if this frequency range is allocated to fixed service. | | |

9.2.3 Configured transmitted power

The NTN VSAT can configure its maximum output power. The configured NTN VSAT maximum output power $P_{CMAX,f,c}$ for carrier f of a serving cell c is defined as that available to the reference point of a given transmitter branch that corresponds to the reference point of the higher-layer filtered RSRP measurement as specified in TS 38.215 [11].

The configured NTN VSAT maximum output power $P_{CMAX,f,c}$ for carrier f of a serving cell c shall be set such that the corresponding measured peak EIRP $P_{UMAX,f,c}$ is within the following bounds

$$P_{UEType}$$
 - $T_{EIRP} \le P_{UMAX,f,c} \le EIRP_{max} + T_{EIRP}$

with P_{UEType} is the NTN VSAT minimum peak EIRP as specified in sub-clause 9.2.1, EIRP_{max} is the applicable maximum EIRP as specified in sub-clause 9.2.1 and T_{EIRP} is equal to 3.4 dB. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

while the corresponding measured total radiated power $P_{TMAX,f,c}$ is bounded by the maximum TRP limit TRP_{MAX} for NTN VSAT defined in sub-clause 9.2.1:

$$P_{TMAX,f,c} \le TRP_{MAX} + T_{TRP}$$

where, T_{TRP} is specified as 3 dB. The $P_{TMAX,f,c}$ requirement is verified with the test metrics of TRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=TRP grid) in beam locked mode.

9.3 Output power dynamics

9.3.1 Minimum output power

The requirement is not applicable in this version of the specification.

9.3.2 Transmit OFF power

9.3.2.1 General

The transmit OFF power is defined as the TRP in the channel bandwidth when the transmitter is OFF. The transmitter is considered OFF when the NTN VSAT is not allowed to transmit on any of its ports.

The transmit OFF power shall be less than -36 dBm/MHz. The requirement is verified with the test metric of TRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=TRP grid).

9.3.3 Transmit ON/OFF time mask

9.3.3.1 General

The transmit ON/OFF time mask defines the transient period(s) allowed

- between transmit OFF power and transmit ON power symbols (transmit ON/OFF)
- between continuous ON-power transmissions when power change or RB hopping is applied.

In case of RB hopping, transition period is shared symmetrically.

Unless otherwise stated the minimum requirements in clause 9.5 apply also in transient periods.

The transmit ON/OFF time mask is defined as a directional requirement. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode at beam peak direction. The maximum allowed EIRP OFF power level is -36dBm/MHz at beam peak direction. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

In the following sub-clauses, following definitions apply:

- A slot transmission is a Type A transmission.
- A long subslot transmission is a Type B transmission with more than 2 symbols.
- A short subslot transmission is a Type B transmission with 1 or 2 symbols.

9.3.3.2 General ON/OFF time mask

The general ON/OFF time mask defines the observation period allowed between transmit OFF and ON power. ON/OFF scenarios include contiguous and non-contiguous transmission.

The OFF power measurement period is defined in a duration of at least one slot excluding any transient periods. The ON power is defined as the mean power over one slot excluding any transient period.



Figure 9.3.3.2-1: General ON/OFF time mask for NR UL transmission in FR2-NTN

9.3.3.3 Transmit power time mask for slot and short or long subslot boundaries

The transmit power time mask for slot and a long subslot transmission boundaries defines the transient periods allowed between slot and long subslot PUSCH transmissions. For PUSCH-PUCCH and PUSCH-SRS transitions and multiplexing the time masks in sub-clause 9.3.3.7 apply.

The transmit power time mask for slot or long subslot and short subslot transmission boundaries defines the transient periods allowed between slot or long subslot and short subslot transmissions. The time masks in sub-clause 9.3.3.8 apply.

The transmit power time mask for short subslot transmissiona boundaries defines the transient periods allowed between short subslot transmissions. The time masks in sub-clause 9.3.3.9 apply.

9.3.3.4 PRACH time mask

The PRACH ON power is specified as the mean power over the PRACH measurement period excluding any transient periods as shown in Figure 9.3.3.4-1. The measurement period for different PRACH preamble format is specified in Table 9.3.3.4-1.

| Format | SCS | Measurement period | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|--|--|--|
| A ₁ | 60 kHz | 0.035677 ms | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.017839 ms | | | |
| A_2 | 60 kHz | 0.071354 ms | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.035677 ms | | | |
| A ₃ | 60 kHz | 0.107031 ms | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.053516 ms | | | |
| B ₁ | 60 kHz | 0.035091 ms | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.0175455 ms | | | |
| B ₄ | 60 kHz | 0.207617 ms | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.103809 ms | | | |
| A ₁ /B ₁ | 60 kHz | 0.035677 ms for front X1 occasion | | | |
| | | 0.035091 ms for last occasion | | | |
| | | X1 = [2,5] | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.017839 ms for front X1occasion | | | |
| | 0.017546 ms for last occasion | | | | |
| | | X1 = [2,5] | | | |
| A ₂ /B ₂ | 60 kHz | 0.071354 ms for front X2 occasion | | | |
| | | 0.069596 ms for last occasion | | | |
| | | X2 = [1,2] | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.035677 ms for front X2 occasion | | | |
| | | 0.034798 ms for last occasion | | | |
| | 00.111 | X2 = [1,2] | | | |
| A ₃ /B ₃ | 60 kHz | 0.107031 ms for first occasion | | | |
| | 400 111 | 0.104101 ms for second occasion | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.053515 ms for first occasion | | | |
| | 00.111 | 0.052050 ms for second occasion | | | |
| C ₀ | C ₀ 60 kHz 0.026758 ms | | | | |
| | 120 kHz | 0.013379 ms | | | |
| C ₂ | 60 kHz | 0.083333 ms | | | |
| NOTE: 5 | 120 kHz | 0.0416667 ms | | | |
| | NOTE: For PRACH on PRACH occasion start from begin of 0ms or 0.5 ms boundary, | | | | |
| t | the measurement period will plus 0.032552 µs | | | | |

Table 9.3.3.4-1: PRACH ON power measurement period

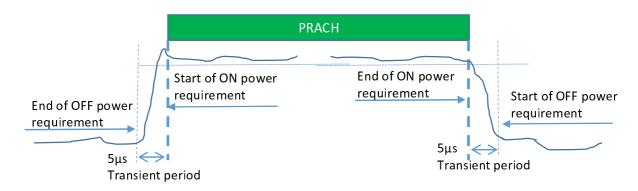


Figure 9.3.3.4-1: PRACH ON/OFF time mask

9.3.3.5 Void

9.3.3.6 SRS time mask

In the case a single SRS transmission, the ON power is defined as the mean power over the symbol duration excluding any transient period; Figure 9.3.3.6-1.

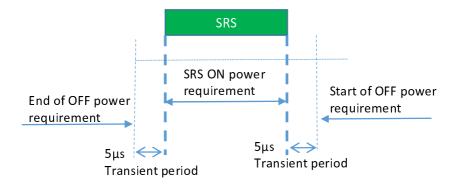


Figure 9.3.3.6-1: Single SRS time mask for NR UL transmission

In the case multiple consecutive SRS transmission, the ON power is defined as the mean power for each symbol duration excluding any transient period. See Figure 9.3.3.6-2

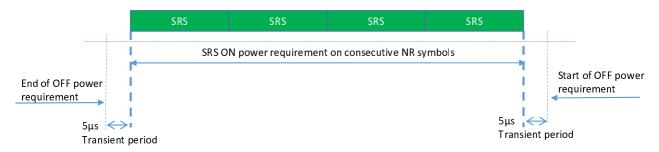


Figure 9.3.3.6-2: Consecutive SRS time mask for the case when no power change is required

When power change between consecutive SRS transmissions is required, then Figure 9.3.3.6-3 and Figure 9.3.3.6-4 apply.

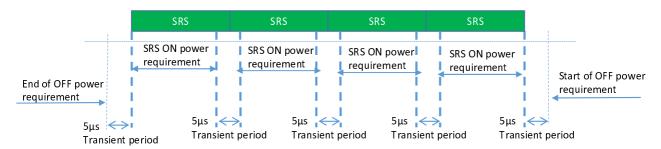


Figure 9.3.3.6-3: Consecutive SRS time mask for the case when power change is required and when 60kHz SCS is used in FR2-NTN

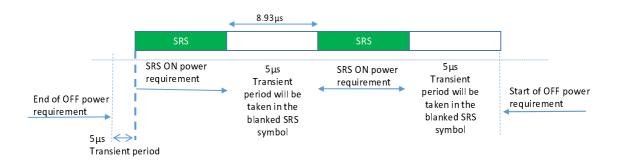


Figure 9.3.3.6-4: Consecutive SRS time mask for the case when power change is required and when 120kHz SCS is used in FR2-NTN

9.3.3.7 PUSCH-PUCCH and PUSCH-SRS time masks

The PUCCH/PUSCH/SRS time mask defines the observation period between sounding reference symbol (SRS) and an adjacent PUSCH/PUCCH symbol and subsequent UL transmissions. The time masks apply for all types of frame structures and their allowed PUCCH/PUSCH/SRS transmissions unless otherwise stated.

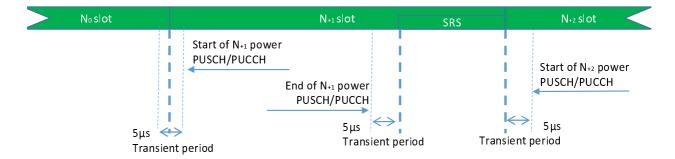


Figure 9.3.3.7-1: PUCCH/PUSCH/SRS time mask when there is a transmission before or after or both before and after SRS

When there is no transmission preceding SRS transmission or succeeding SRS transmission, then the same time mask applies as shown in Figure 9.3.3.7-1.

9.3.3.8 Transmit power time mask for consecutive slot or long subslot transmission and short subslot transmission boundaries

The transmit power time mask for consecutive slot or long subslot transmission and short subslot transmission boundaries defines the transient periods allowed between such transmissions.

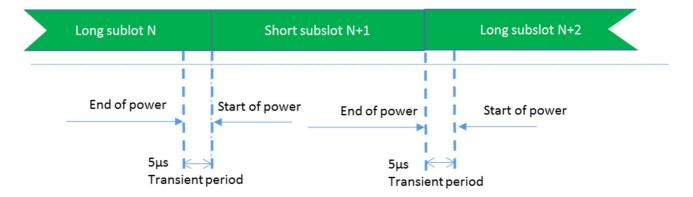


Figure 9.3.3.8-1: Consecutive slot or long subslot transmission and short subslot transmission time mask

9.3.3.9 Transmit power time mask for consecutive short subslot transmissions boundaries

The transmit power time mask for consecutive short subslot transmission boundaries defines the transient periods allowed between short subslot transmissions.

The transient period shall be equally shared as shown on Figure 9.3.3.9-1.

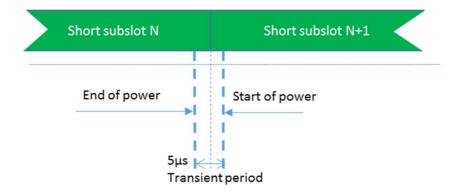


Figure 9.3.3.9-1: Consecutive short subslot transmissions time mask where DMRS is not the first symbol in the adjacent short subslot transmission

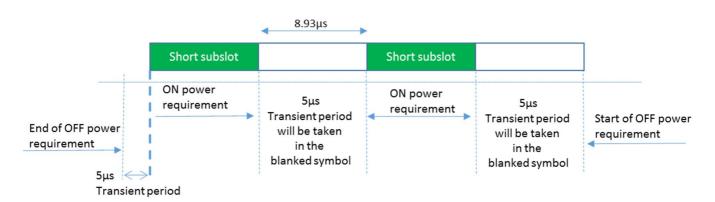


Figure 9.3.3.9-2: Consecutive short subslot (1 symbol gap) time mask for the case when transient period is required on both sides of the symbol and when 120 kHz SCS is used in FR2

9.3.4 Power control

9.3.4.1 General

The requirements on power control accuracy apply under normal conditions and are defined as a directional requirement. The requirements are verified in beam locked mode on beam peak direction.

The applicant shall declare the method and accuracy of uplink power control.

9.4 Transmitter signal quality

9.4.1 Frequency Error

The NTN VSAT basic measurement interval of modulated carrier frequency is 1 UL slot. The NTN VSAT precompensates the uplink modulated carrier frequency by the estimated Doppler shift according to 3GPP TS 38.300 [9] sub-clause 16.14.2. The mean value of basic measurements of NTN VSAT modulated carrier frequency shall be accurate to within \pm 0.1 PPM observed over a period of 1 ms of cumulated measurement intervals compared to ideally pre-compensated reference uplink carrier frequency.

[NOTE: The ideally pre-compensated reference uplink carrier frequency consists of the UL carrier frequency signalled to the NTN VSAT by SAN and UL pre-compensated Doppler frequency shift. For the test case, the location of the NTN VSAT is explicitly provided to the NTN VSAT from the test equipment.]

Requirement will be verified for at least two cases of which one has zero Doppler conditions.

The frequency error is defined as a directional requirement. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode with the test metric of Frequency (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

9.4.2 Transmit modulation quality

9.4.2.1 General

Transmit modulation quality defines the modulation quality for expected in-channel RF transmissions from the NTN VSAT. The transmit modulation quality is specified in terms of:

- Error Vector Magnitude (EVM) for the allocated resource blocks (RBs)

All the parameters defined in sub-clause 9.4.2 are defined using the measurement methodology specified in Annex F.

All the requirements in sub-clause 9.4.2 are defined as directional requirement. The requirements are verified in beam locked mode on beam peak direction, with parameter *maxRank* (as defined in TS 38.331 [11]) set to 1. The requirements are applicable to UL transmission from each configurable antenna port (as defined in TS 38.331 [11]) of UE, enabled one at a time.

9.4.2.2 Error vector magnitude

The Error Vector Magnitude is a measure of the difference between the reference waveform and the measured waveform. This difference is called the error vector. Before calculating the EVM, the measured waveform is corrected by the sample timing offset and RF frequency offset. Then the carrier leakage shall be removed from the measured waveform before calculating the EVM.

For DFT-s-OFDM waveforms, the EVM result is defined after the front-end FFT and IDFT as the square root of the ratio of the mean error vector power to the mean reference power expressed as a percentage value (%). For CP-OFDM waveforms, the EVM result is defined after the front-end FFT as the square root of the ratio of the mean error vector power to the mean reference power expressed as a percentage value (%).

The basic EVM measurement interval in the time domain is one preamble sequence for the PRACH and one slot for PUCCH and PUSCH in the time domain. The EVM measurement interval is reduced by any symbols that contains an allowable power transient in the measurement interval as as defined in sub-clause 9.3.3.

The RMS average of the basic EVM measurements over 10 subframes for the average EVM case, and over 60 subframes for the reference signal EVM case, for the different modulation schemes shall not exceed the values specified in Table 9.4.2.2-1 for the parameters defined in Table 9.4.2.2-2. For EVM evaluation purposes, all 13 PRACH preamble formats and all 5 PUCCH formats are considered to have the same EVM requirement as QPSK modulated.

The requirement is verified with the test metric of EVM (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 9.4.2.2-1: Minimum requirements for error vector magnitude

| Parameter | Unit | Average EVM level | Reference signal EVM level |
|-----------|------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| Pi/2 BPSK | % | 30.0 | 30.0 |
| QPSK | % | 17.5 | 17.5 |
| 16QAM | % | 12.5 | 12.5 |
| 64QAM | % | 8.0 | 8.0 |

Table 9.4.2.2-2: Parameters for Error Vector Magnitude

| Parameter | Unit | Level |
|----------------------------|------|-------------------|
| NTN VSAT EIRP | dBm | ≥ [Min peak EIRP] |
| NTN VSAT EIRP for UL 16QAM | dBm | ≥ [Min peak EIRP] |
| NTN VSAT EIRP for UL 64QAM | dBm | ≥ [Min peak EIRP] |
| Operating conditions | | Normal conditions |

9.5 Output RF spectrum emissions

9.5.1 Occupied bandwidth

Occupied bandwidth is defined as the bandwidth containing 99 % of the total integrated mean power of the transmitted spectrum on the assigned channel. The occupied bandwidth for all transmission bandwidth configurations (Resources Blocks) shall be less than the channel bandwidth specified in Table 9.5.1-1.

The occupied bandwidth is defined as a directional requirement. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode with the test metric of OBW (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 9.5.1-1: Occupied channel bandwidth

| | Occupied channel bandwidth / Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|-----------------|--|----------------|-----|-----|--|
| | 50 | 50 100 200 400 | | | |
| | MHz | MHz | MHz | MHz | |
| Channel | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| bandwidth (MHz) | | | | | |

9.5.2 Out of Band Emissions

9.5.2.1 General

The Out of band emissions are unwanted emissions immediately outside the assigned channel bandwidth resulting from the modulation process and non-linearity in the transmitter but excluding spurious emissions. This out of band emission limit is specified in terms of a spectrum emission mask and an adjacent channel leakage power ratio. Additional requirements to protect specific bands are also considered.

The requirements in sub-clause 9.5.2.2 only apply when both UL and DL of an NTN VSAT are configured for single CC operation, and they are of the same bandwidth.

All out of band emissions for FR2-NTN are specified as TRP.

The spectrum emission mask of the NTN VSAT applies to frequencies starting from the \pm edge of the assigned NR channel bandwidth.

9.5.2.2 Spectrum emission mask

9.5.2.2.1 General NR spectrum emission mask

The power of any NTN VSAT emission shall not exceed the Basic limits specified in Table 9.5.2.2-1 for the specified channel bandwidth. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode with the test metric of TRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=TRP grid). Where:

- Δf is the separation between the Transmission BW *channel edge* frequency and the nominal -3dB point of the measuring filter closest to the carrier frequency.

- f_offset is the separation between the *channel edge* frequency and the centre of the measuring filter.Table 9.5.2.2.1-1: General NR spectrum emission mask for FR2-NTN

| Frequency offset of measurement filter -3dB point, Δf | Frequency offset of measurement filter centre frequency, f_offset | Basic limits (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth |
|---|---|--|--------------------------|
| 0 MHz ≤ Δf < 2× BW | 0.5 MHz ≤ f_offset < 2× BW + 0.5 MHz | $max \left(11, TRP_{rated} - 10 log 10 (BW) - 40 \times log 10 \left(\frac{f_{offset} - 0.5}{BW} \times 2 + 1\right)\right) dBm$ | 1 MHz |

NOTE 1: TRP_{rated} is the declared rated output power lower than or equal to TRP_{max} specified in sub-clause 9.2.1;

NOTE 2: Transmission BW is in the unit of MHz;

NOTE 3: The 11dBm/1MHz value corresponds to the spurious emission limit specified in spurious emission subclause 9.5.3, and is converted from the SE limit requirement defined on 4 kHz to a value defined over 1

NOTE 4: PSD attenuation as in ITU-R SM.1541-6 [6], Annex 5 OoB domain emission limits for earth stations.

9.5.2.2.2 Additional spectrum emission mask

For bands n511 and n510 the mean power of emissions shall be attenuated below the mean output power of the transmitter (measured in dBm) in accordance with [FCC 25.202].

The power of any NTN VSAT emission shall not exceed the Basic limits specified in Table 9.5.2.2.2-1 for the specified channel bandwidth. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode with the test metric of TRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=TRP grid). Where: f_offset is the separation between the *channel edge* frequency and the centre of the measuring filter.

Table 9.5.2.2.2-1: Additional spectrum emission mask

| Frequency offset of measurement filter centre frequency, f_offset | Basic limits (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth |
|--|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 0.002MHz+0.5xBW ≤ f_offset < 1xBW- 0.002MHz | TRP _{rated} (dBm) - 25 dB | 4 kHz |
| 0.002MHz+1xBW ≤ f_offset < 2.5xBW- 0.002MHz | TRP _{rated} (dBm) - 35 dB | 4 kHz |
| 0.002MHz+2.5xBW ≤ f_offset < 2 nd harmonic of the upper frequency edge of the UL operating band in GHz | -13 dBm | 4 kHz |

NOTE 1: TRP_{rated} is the declared rated output power lower than or equal to TRP_{max} specified in sub-clause 9.2.1:

NOTE 2: Transmission BW is in the unit of MHz;

NOTE 3: Measurement bandwidths as in ITU-R SM.329 [16], s4.1.

NOTE 4: Upper frequency as in ITU-R SM.329 [16], s2.5 table 1.

9.5.2.3 Adjacent channel leakage ratio

Adjacent Channel Leakage power Ratio (ACLR) is the ratio of the filtered mean power centred on the assigned channel frequency to the filtered mean power centred on an adjacent channel frequency. ACLR requirement is specified for a scenario in which adjacent carrier is another NR channel.

NR Adjacent Channel Leakage power Ratio (NR_{ACLR}) is the ratio of the filtered mean power centred on the assigned channel frequency to the filtered mean power centred on an adjacent channel frequency at nominal channel spacing. The

assigned NR channel power and adjacent NR channel power are measured with rectangular filters with measurement bandwidths specified in Table 9.5.2.3-1 for FR2-NTN.

If the measured adjacent channel power is greater than [–35] dBm then the NR_{ACLR} shall be higher than the value specified in Table 9.5.2.3-1. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode with the test metric of TRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=TRP grid).

Channel bandwidth / NR_{ACLR} / Measurement bandwidth 100 50 200 400 MHz MHz MHz MHz NR_{ACLR} for band n512, 14 dB 14 dB 14 dB 14 dB n511, n510 NR channel measurement 47.58 95.16 190.20 380.28 bandwidth (MHz) +100 +200 +50 +400 Adjacent channel centre frequency offset (MHz) -50 -100 -200 -400

Table 9.5.2.3-1: General requirements for NR_{ACLR} for FR2-NTN

9.5.3 Spurious Emissions

9.5.3.1 General

Spurious emissions are emissions which are caused by unwanted transmitter effects such as harmonics emission, parasitic emissions, intermodulation products and frequency conversion products, but exclude out of band emissions unless otherwise stated. The spurious emission limits are specified in terms of general requirements in line with SM.329 [16] and NR operating band requirement to address UE co-existence. Spurious emissions are measured as TRP.

To improve measurement accuracy, sensitivity and efficiency, the resolution bandwidth may be smaller than the measurement bandwidth. When the resolution bandwidth is smaller than the measurement bandwidth, the result should be integrated over the measurement bandwidth in order to obtain the equivalent noise bandwidth of the measurement bandwidth.

Unless otherwise stated, the spurious emission limits apply for the frequency ranges that are more than F_{OOB} (MHz) in Table 9.5.3.1-1 starting from the edge of the assigned NR channel bandwidth. The spurious emission limits in Table 9.5.3.1-2 apply for all transmitter band configurations (NRB) and channel bandwidths. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode with the test metric of TRP (Link=TX beam peak direction, Meas=TRP grid).

NOTE: For measurement conditions at the edge of each frequency range, the lowest frequency of the measurement position in each frequency range should be set at the lowest boundary of the frequency range plus MBW/2. The highest frequency of the measurement position in each frequency range should be set at the highest boundary of the frequency range minus MBW/2. MBW denotes the measurement bandwidth defined for the protected band.

Table 9.5.3.1-1: Boundary between NR out of band and spurious emission domain

| Channel bandwidth | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| | MHz | MHz | MHz | MHz |
| OOB boundary F _{OOB} (MHz) | 100 | 200 | 400 | 800 |

Table 9.5.3.1-2: Spurious emissions limits

| Freq | uency Range | Maximum Level | Measurement bandwidth |
|-------------|--|------------------|--------------------------|
| upper frequ | ≤ 2 nd harmonic of the ency edge of the UL ng band in GHz | -13 dBm | 4 kHz |

9.5.3.2 On-axis spurious requirement

9.5.3.2.1 Applicability

The regional On-axis spurious requirement is applicable to NTN VSAT operating in band n512. The On-axis spurious emissions are measured as EIRP.

These limits are applicable to the complete NTN VSAT equipment, including cabling between the units.

9.5.3.2.2 "Emissions disabled" and "Carrier-off" states

The requirements specified in table 9.5.3.2.2-1 apply to NTN VSAT in "Emissions disabled" and "Carrier-off" states. They apply outside the transmission bandwidth.

Table 9.5.3.2.2-1: On-axis spurious limits in "Emissions disabled" and "Carrier-off" states

| Frequency range (GHz) | EIRP Limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| (GHZ) | (ubiii) | (IVITIZ) |
| 27.5 – 30.0 | 19 | 1 |

9.5.3.2.3 "Carrier-on" state

The requirements specified in Tables 9.5.3.2.3-1 and 9.5.3.2.3-2 apply to NTN VSAT in "Carrier-on".

The requirement specified in Table 9.5.3.2.3-1 apply outside a bandwidth of 5 times the occupied bandwidth centred on the carrier centre frequency.

The requirement specified in Table 9.5.3.2.3-2 apply inside a bandwidth of 5 times the occupied bandwidth centred on the carrier centre frequency, and outside the transmission bandwidth.

NOTE: The on-axis spurious radiations, outside the frequency range 27.5 GHz to 30.0 GHz, are indirectly limited by sub-clause 9.5.3.3.

Table 9.5.5.2.2.3-1: On-axis spurious limits in "Carrier-on" state - outside

| Frequency range (GHz) | NTN VSAT type | EIRP Limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 27.5 – 30.0 | 4, 5 | 44 - K (NOTE) | 1 |
| | 1, 2, 3 | 4 - K (NOTE) | 1 |

NOTE: K=10log₁₀(N) with N the number of terminals simultaneously transmitting at the same EIRP on a given carrier frequency in the same measurement bandwidth. K = 0 if only one NTN VSAT transmits at any one time on a given carrier frequency. See sub-clause 4.2.2.2.1 in [17] for Mobile VSAT or sub-clause 4.2.4.2 in [18] for Fixed VSAT. The manufacturer shall declare the value of N.

Table 9.5.5.2.2.3-2: On-axis spurious limits in "Carrier-on" state - inside

| Frequency range (GHz) | NTN VSAT type | EIRP Limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) |
|--------------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 27.5 – 30.0 | 4, 5 | 58 - K (NOTE) | 1 |
| | 1, 2, 3 | 48 - K (NOTE) | 1 |

NOTE: K=10log₁₀(N) with N the number of terminals simultaneously transmitting at the same EIRP on a given carrier frequency in the same measurement bandwidth. K = 0 if only one NTN VSAT transmits at any one time on a given carrier frequency. See sub-clause 4.2.2.2.1 in [17] for Mobile VSAT or sub-clause 4.2.4.2 in [18] for Fixed VSAT. The manufacturer shall declare the value of N.

9.5.3.3 Off-axis spurious requirement

9.5.3.3.1 Applicability

The regional Off-axis spurious requirement is applicable to NTN VSAT operating in band n512. The Off-axis spurious emissions are measured as EIRP.

These limits are applicable to the complete NTN VSAT equipment, including cabling between the units.

9.5.3.3.2 General

The requirements specified in table 9.5.3.3.2-1 apply to NTN VSAT at 10 meters distance from the NTN VSAT.

Table 9.5.3.3.2-1: Radiated field strength limits at 10m from the NTN VSAT

| Frequency range (MHz) | EIRP Limit (dBμV/m) | Measurement bandwidth (kHz) |
|--------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 30 – 230 | 30 | 120 |
| 230 – 1000 | 37 | 120 |

9.5.3.3.3 "Emissions disabled" state

The requirements specified in table 9.5.3.3.3-1 apply to NTN VSAT in "Emissions disabled" state for all off-axis angles greater than 7° or greater than the minimum elevation angle supported, whichever is lower.

Table 9.5.3.3.3-1: Off-axis spurious limits in "Emissions disabled" state

| Frequency range (GHz) | EIRP Limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (kHz) |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1.0 – 2.0 | -48 | 100 |
| 2.0 – 10.7 | -42 | 100 |
| 10.7 – 21.2 | -36 | 100 |
| 21.2 – 60.0 | -30 | 100 |

9.5.3.3.4 "Carrier-on" and "Carrier-off" states

The requirements specified in table 9.5.3.3.4-1 apply to NTN VSAT in "Carrier-on" and "Carrier-off" states for all off-axis angles greater than 7° or greater than the minimum elevation angle supported, whichever is lower.

Table 9.5.3.3.4-1: Off-axis spurious limits in "Carrier-on" and "Carrier-off" states

| Frequency range (GHz) | EIRP Limit (dBm) | Measurement bandwidth (MHz) | | | | |
|---|---------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1.00 – 3.40 | -41 | 0.1 | | | | |
| 3.40 - 10.70 | -35 | 0.1 | | | | |
| 10.70 – 21.20 | -29 | 0.1 | | | | |
| 21.20 – 27.35 | -23 | 0.1 | | | | |
| 27.35 – 27.50 | -5 (Note 1) | 1 | | | | |
| | -23 (Note 2) | 0.1 | | | | |
| 27.50 – 29.35 | -5 (Note 1) | 1 | | | | |
| | -23 (Note 2) | 0.1 | | | | |
| 29.35 – 29.50 | -5 | 1 | | | | |
| 30.00 – 30.15 | -5 | 1 | | | | |
| 30.15 – 60.00 | -23 | 0.1 | | | | |
| NOTE 1: For mobile VSAT transmitting in the frequency range 29.5 – 30.0 GHz | | | | | | |

NOTE 1: For mobile VSAT transmitting in the frequency range 29.5 – 30.0 GHz NOTE 2: For mobile VSAT transmitting in the frequency range 27.5 – 29.5 GHz

9.6 Antenna pointing accuracy and performance

9.6.1 Antenna pointing accuracy

9.6.1.1 Minimum requirements for NTN VSAT

9.6.1.1.1 Applicability

Except if otherwise stated, the following regional requirements are applicable to NTN VSAT types 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 operating in band n512.

9.6.1.1.2 Pointing Accuracy

The manufacturer shall declare the peak pointing accuracy ($\delta \phi$) and the associated statistical basis.

The antenna shall maintain the declared peak pointing accuracy ($\delta \phi$), such that the off-axis EIRP emission density pattern projected onto the geostationary arc remains within the mask specified in sub-clauses 9.2.2.2 and 9.2.2.3 when shifted by an angle of $\pm (\delta \phi^{\circ})$, taking into account the following factors [17]:

- the worst case operational environmental conditions;
- maximum dynamics for Mobile VSAT (e.g. maximum movement of the platform e.g. airplane, boat, vehicle during the connectivity time); and
- the range of latitude, longitude and altitude relative to the satellite orbital position.

9.6.1.1.3 On-axis cross polarization isolation

9.6.1.1.3.1 Linearly polarized NTN VSAT

This requirement is applicable to NTN VSAT type 1, 2, 4 and 5.

For linearly polarized NTN VSAT, the manufacturer shall declare the on-axis cross polarization isolation of the NTN VSAT [17, 18].

The polarization angle shall be continuously adjustable within the operational range as declared by the manufacturer.

It shall be possible to fix the transmit antenna polarization angle with an accuracy of at least 1° .

When linear polarization is used for both transmission and reception, the angle between the receive and corresponding transmit polarization planes shall not deviate by more than 1° from the nominal value declared by the manufacturer.

9.6.1.1.3.2 Circularly polarized NTN VSAT

For circularly polarized NTN VSAT, the manufacturer shall declare the voltage axial ratio.

9.6.1.2 Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT types 1 or 2

9.6.1.2.1 Applicability

The following regional requirements are applicable to Fixed VSAT types 1 or 2 operating in band n512 when connected to Geostationary Satellite Orbit (GSO) SAN.

9.6.1.2.2 Pointing Stability

Pointing stability: Under the condition of 100 km/h maximum wind speed, with gusts of 130 km/h lasting 3 seconds, the installation shall not show any sign of permanent distortion and shall not need repointing after the application of the wind load.

9.6.1.2.3 Pointing Accuracy

9.6.1.2.3.1 General

The manufacturer shall declare the usage area in terms of the range of latitude and longitude relative to the satellite orbital position where the alignments specified below are possible.

9.6.1.2.3.2 Main beam pointing accuracy

The antenna sub-system alignment facilities shall enable the main beam axis to be adjusted and fixed with a pointing accuracy $(\delta \phi)$ of either:

- $-1)0,1^{\circ}$; or
- 2) a greater value declared by the applicant, subject to the following restrictions:
 - the pointing accuracy ($\delta \varphi$) shall not exceed 30 % of the antenna transmit main beam half power beamwidth;
 - the off-axis e.i.r.p. emission density pattern remains within the mask specified in sub-clause 9.2.2.3 when shifted by an angle of $\pm (\delta \varphi 0.1^{\circ})$.

9.6.1.2.3.3 Alignment with the geostationary satellite orbit

Alignment with the geostationary satellite orbit. For antennas with asymmetric main beam, the antenna shall be capable of having the plane defined by the antenna main beam axis and its major axis aligned with the tangent to the geostationary orbit in accordance with the method declared by the manufacturer.

9.6.1.2.4 Polarization angle alignment capability for linear polarization

Following conditions will apply:

- The polarization angle shall be continuously adjustable within the operational range as declared by the manufacturer.
- It shall be possible to fix the transmit antenna polarization angle with an accuracy of at least 1° .
- When linear polarization is used for both transmission and reception, the angle between the receive and corresponding transmit polarization planes shall not deviate by more than 1° from the nominal value declared by the manufacturer.

9.6.2 Antenna performance

The following requirements are applicable to NTN VSAT type 1, type 2, type 4 or type 5 operating in band n511 or in band n510 and communicating with Geostationary Satellite Orbit (GSO) SAN.

The co-polarization gain in the plane tangent to the GSO arc shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 9.6.2-1. This envelope may be exceeded by up to 3 dB in 10% of the range of θ angles from $\pm 7-180^{\circ}$, and by up to 6 dB in the region of main reflector spillover energy.

Table 9.6.2-1: Co-polarization gain limit in the plane tangent to the GSO arc

| θ value | Co-polarization gain (dBi) |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 2° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | 29 – 25log ₁₀ (θ) |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 8 |
| 9.2° ≤ θ ≤ 19.1° | $32 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ |
| 19.1° < θ ≤ 180° | 0 |

The co-polarization gain in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 9.6.2-2. This envelope may be exceeded by up to 3 dB in 10% of the range of θ angles from $\pm 7-180^{\circ}$, and by up to 6 dB in the region of main reflector spillover energy.

Table 9.6.2-2: Co-polarization gain limit in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc

| θ value | Co-polarization gain (dBi) | | |
|------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| 3.5° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | $32 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | | |
| 7° ≤ θ ≤ 9.2° | 10.9 | | |
| 9.2° ≤ θ ≤ 19.1° | $35 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | | |
| 19.1° < θ ≤ 180° | 3 | | |

The off-axis cross-polarization gain in the plane tangent and in the plane perpendicular to the GSO arc shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 9.6.2-3.

Table 9.6.2-3: Cross-polarization gain limit

| θ value | Cross-polarization gain (dBi) | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|--|
| 2° ≤ θ ≤ 7° | $19 - 25\log_{10}(\theta)$ | |

9.7 Additional regional requirements indicated by NS

9.7.1 General

Additional requirements can be signalled by the network. Each group of additional requirements is associated with a unique network signalling (NS) value indicated in RRC signalling by an NR NTN frequency band number of the applicable FR2-NTN operating band and an associated value in the field *additionalSpectrumEmission*. Throughout this specification, the notion of indication or signalling of an NS value refers to the corresponding indication of an NR frequency band number of the applicable operating band, the IE field *freqBandIndicatorNR* and an associated value of *additionalSpectrumEmission* in the relevant RRC information elements [8].

Table 9.7.1-1 specifies the additional regional requirements with their associated network signalling values, the applicable satellite orbit scenario(s) and applicable FR2-NTN operating band(s) for each NS value. The mapping of NR frequency band numbers and values of the additionalSpectrumEmission to network signalling labels is specified in Table 9.7.1-2.

Table 9.7.1-1: Additional regional requirements indicated by Network Signalling label

| Network Signalling label | Requirements (clause) | Applicable Satellite orbit scenario | NR satellite Band | Channel bandwidth (MHz) |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| NS_200N | | GSO and LEO | Table 5.2.3-1 | 50, 100, 200, 400 |
| NS_201N | Clause 9.2.2.3 Clause 9.5.3.2 Clause 9.5.3.3 Clause 9.6.1.1 Clause 9.6.1.2 Clause 10.8 | GSO | n512 | 50, 100, 200, 400 |
| NS_202N | Clause 9.5.3.2 Clause 9.5.3.3 Clause 9.6.1.1 | LEO | n512 | 50, 100, 200, 400 |

Table 9.7.1-2: Mapping of network signalling label

| NR satellite band | Value of additionalSpectrumEmission | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | 0 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 | | | | | | | |
| n512 | NS_200N | | | | | | | | |
| n511 | NS_200N Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| n510 | NS_200N Reserved | | | | | | | | |

NOTE 1: additionalSpectrumEmission corresponds to an information element of the same name defined in clause 6.3.2 of 3GPP TS 38.331 [8].

NOTE 2: For band n511 and n510, only NS_200N can be used to map.

10 Radiated receiver characteristics

10.1 General

Unless otherwise stated, the receiver characteristics are specified over the air (OTA) at the RIB for Ka bands fixed and mobile VSAT. The power level for all DL wanted signals and interference is defined assuming a 0 dBi reference antenna located at the center of the quiet zone.

10.2 Polarization characteristics

The minimum requirements on the receiver characteristics apply under either LHCP (Left Hand Circular Polarization) or RHCP (Right Hand Circular Polarization) or Linear Polarization.

10.3 OTA reference sensitivity level

10.3.1 General

The OTA REFSENS requirement is a *directional requirement* and is intended to ensure the minimum OTA reference sensitivity level at the centre of the quiet zone in the RX beam peak direction. The OTA reference sensitivity power level EIS_{REFSENS} is the minimum mean power received over the air at the RIB, at which the throughput shall meet or exceed the requirements for a specified reference measurement channel.

10.3.2 Minimum requirement

The throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annexes A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with peak reference sensitivity specified in Table 10.3.2-1. EIS_{REFSENS_50M} declared by the vendor is an integer value in the range specified in Table 10.3.2-2 for different types of NTN VSAT. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link Angle).

The EIS of Rx beam peak direction should be verified within the declared minimum elevation angle supported for receiving. The steered beam peak directions can be achieved by mechanical steering and/or electronic steering according to VSAT Type. Where the supported minimum elevation angle shall be declared by manufacturer and within the range of $3^{\circ} \le \text{minimum}$ elevation angle $\le 75^{\circ}$, and it can be expressed as $(90-\theta)$ if the coordinate systems in Figure 10.3.2-1 below is taken as an example.

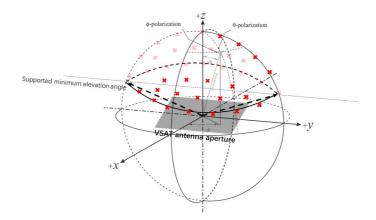


Figure 10.3.2-1 Example measurement grid for EIS with the declared supported minimum elevation angle

Table 10.3.2-1: OTA reference sensitivity requirement for NTN VSAT

| NTN VSAT channel bandwidth (MHz) UL/DL RB allocation | | OTA reference sensitivity level, EIS _{REFSENS} (dBm) | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 50, 100, 200, 400 | Full RB allocation N _{RB} as specified in sub- clause 5.3.2 | EIS _{REFSENS_50MHz} + 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SCS x 12 / factor) (NOTE 1) | | | |
| NOTE 1: The "factor" represents the normalized factor to scale EIS for different (Channel bandwidth, SCS) configurations. The value of factor is 66 RBs x 60 kHz SCS x 12, i.e. 47520 kHz. | | | | | |

Table 10.3.2-2: The range of EIS_{REFSENS} 50MHz declared by vendor per NTN VSAT

| Operating band | NTN VSAT class | NTN VSAT type | The range of EIS _{REFSENS_50MHz} (dBm) |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|---|
| n512, n511 | Fixed VSAT | 1, 2 | ≤ -122 |
| | Fixed VSAT | 3 | ≤ -115.6 |
| n512, n511, n510 | Mobile VSAT | 4, 5 | ≤ -122 |

10.4 Maximum input level

10.4.1 General

The maximum input level is defined as the maximum mean power, for which the throughput shall meet or exceed the minimum requirements for the specified reference measurement channel.

The maximum input level is defined as a directional requirement. The requirement is verified in beam locked mode in the direction where peak gain is achieved.

10.4.2 Minimum requirement for Mobile VSAT

For mobile VSAT, the throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annex A (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 10.4.2-1. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 10.4.2-1: Maximum input level

| R | k Parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth | | | |
|--|--|--------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| | | | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| | | | MHz | MHz | MHz | MHz |
| Powe | r in transmission | dBm | - | 109.6 for type 4 and | type 5 (NOTE | 2, 3, 4) |
| bandw | idth configuration | | | | | |
| NOTE 1: | The transmitter shal | | | | defined in sub- | clause 9.2.3, |
| | with uplink configura | ation specif | fied in Ta | ble 10.3.2-1. | | |
| NOTE 2: | NOTE 2: Reference measurement channel is specified in Annex A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3: QPSk | | | | | |
| | R=1/3 variant with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1. | | | | ex A.5.1.1. | |
| NOTE 3: | NOTE 3: Reference measurement channel is specified in Annex A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3: 16QAM | | | | 2.1.3: 16QAM, | |
| | R=1/2 variant with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1. | | | | | ex A.5.1.1. |
| NOTE 4: Reference measurement channel is specified in Annex A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3: 64Q | | | | 2.1.3: 64QAM, | | |
| | R=1/2 variant with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1. | | | | ex A.5.1.1. | |

10.4.3 Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT

For fixed VSAT, the throughput shall be ≥ 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annex A (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with

parameters specified in Table 10.4.3.-1. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 10.4.3-1: Maximum input level

| Rx Parameter | | Units | Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|--------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------|--------------|--|
| | | | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| | | | MHz | MHz | MHz | MHz | |
| Powe | r in transmission | dBm | -10 | 1 for type 1, type 2 a | and type 3 (NO | TE 2, 3, 4) | |
| bandwidth configuration | | | | | | | |
| NOTE 1: | NOTE 1: The transmitter shall be set to [4 dB] below the PUMAX,f,c as defined in sub-clause 9.2.3, | | | | | | |
| | with uplink configura | ation specif | fied in Ta | ble 10.3.2-1. | | | |
| NOTE 2: | Reference measure | ment chan | nel is spe | ecified in Annex A.3. | .2.1.2 and A.3. | 2.1.3: QPSK, | |
| | R=1/3 variant with o | ne sided d | ynamic C | OCNG Pattern as de | scribed in Ann | ex A.5.1.1. | |
| NOTE 3: | NOTE 3: Reference measurement channel is specified in Annex A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3: 16QAM, | | | | | | |
| | R=1/2 variant with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1. | | | | | | |
| NOTE 4: | NOTE 4: Reference measurement channel is specified in Annex A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3: 64QAM | | | | | | |
| | R=1/2 variant with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1. | | | | | ex A.5.1.1. | |

10.5 Adjacent channel selectivity

10.5.1 Minimum requirement for Mobile VSAT

Adjacent Channel Selectivity (ACS) is a measure of a receiver's ability to receive a NR signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an adjacent channel signal at a given frequency offset from the centre frequency of the assigned channel. ACS is the ratio of the receive filter attenuation on the assigned channel frequency to the receive filter attenuation on the adjacent channel(s).

The requirement applies at the RIB when the AoA of the incident wave of the wanted signal and the interfering signal are both from the same direction.

For mobile VSAT, the throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annexes A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 10.5.1-1 and Table 10.5.1-2. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 10.5.1-1: Adjacent channel selectivity

| Operating band | Units | Adjacent channel selectivity / Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|------------------|-------|--|---------|---------|---------|--|
| | | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz | |
| n512, n511, n510 | dB | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | |

Table 10.5.1-2: Adjacent channel selectivity test parameters

| Rx Parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------|---|---------------------------|--|
| | | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz | |
| Power in | dBm | EIS _{RE} | FSENS_50M + 6 dB + | 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SC | S x 12 / factor) | |
| Transmission | | | | NOTE 5 | | |
| Bandwidth | | | | | | |
| Configuration | | | | | | |
| P _{Interferer} for band | dBm | EISRE | FSENS_50M + 28.7 + | 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SC | S x 12 / factor) | |
| n512, n511, n510 | | | | NOTE 5 | | |
| BWInterferer | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| Finterferer (offset) | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| | | / | / | / | / | |
| | | -50 | -100 | -200 | -400 | |
| | | NOTE 3 | NOTE 3 | NOTE 3 | NOTE 3 | |
| | | ts of the Reference measurement channel specified in Annex A.3.3 [15] with | | | | |
| | /namic O | CNG Pattern as | described in Anne | ex A.5.2.1 [15] and | d set-up according to | |
| Annex C. | | | | | | |
| | | • | r is an integer valu | ue in the range spe | ecified in Table 10.3.2-2 | |
| for different | | | | | | |
| | | | fset Finterferer (offse | | | |
| | (CEIL(F _{Interferer} (offset) /SCS) + 0.5)*SCS MHz with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wanted | | | | pacing of the wanted | |
| | signal in MHz. Wanted and interferer signal have same SCS. | | | | | |
| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | | | |
| | configuration specified in Table 10.3.2-1. | | | | | |
| | | • | the normalized fa | | • | |
| interference | interference level for different (Channel bandwidth, SCS) configurations. The value of factor is 66 | | | | | |

10.5.2 Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT

RBs x 60 kHz SCS x 12, i.e. 47520 kHz.

Adjacent Channel Selectivity (ACS) is a measure of a receiver's ability to receive a NR signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an adjacent channel signal at a given frequency offset from the centre frequency of the assigned channel. ACS is the ratio of the receive filter attenuation on the assigned channel frequency to the receive filter attenuation on the adjacent channel(s).

The requirement applies at the RIB when the AoA of the incident wave of the wanted signal and the interfering signal are both from the same direction.

For fixed VSAT, the throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annexes A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 10.5.2-1 and Table 10.5.2-2. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 10.5.2-1: Adjacent channel selectivity

| Operating band | Units | Adjacent channel selectivity / Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|------------------|-------|--|---------|---------|---------|--|
| | | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz | |
| n512, n511, n510 | dB | 25 | 25 | 25 | 25 | |

Table 10.5.2-2: Adjacent channel selectivity test parameters

| Rx Parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|-------------------|-------------------------|---|---------------------------|--|
| | | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz | |
| Power in | dBm | EIS _{RE} | FSENS_50M + 6 dB + | 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SC | S x 12 / factor) | |
| Transmission | | | | NOTE 5 | | |
| Bandwidth | | | | | | |
| Configuration | | | | | | |
| P _{Interferer} for band | dBm | EIS _{RE} | FSENS_50M + 28.7 + | • , | S x 12 / factor) | |
| n512, n511, n510 | | | | NOTE 5 | . | |
| BWInterferer | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| Finterferer (offset) | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| | | / | / | / | / | |
| | | -50 | -100 | -200 | -400 | |
| | | NOTE 3 | NOTE 3 | NOTE 3 | NOTE 3 | |
| NOTE 1: The interfere | | | | | | |
| | namic O | CNG Pattern as | described in Anne | ex A.5.2.1 [15] and | d set-up according to | |
| Annex C. | | | | | | |
| | | • | r is an integer valu | ue in the range spe | ecified in Table 10.3.2-2 | |
| for different t | , , | | | | | |
| | | | fset Finterferer (offse | | | |
| | (CEIL(F _{Interferer} (offset) /SCS) + 0.5)*SCS MHz with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wante | | | pacing of the wanted | | |
| | signal in MHz. Wanted and interferer signal have same SCS. | | | | | |
| | , , , | | | | | |
| | configuration specified in Table 10.3.2-1. SCS is in kHz, the "factor" represents the normalized factor to scale wanted signal and | | | | | |
| | | • | | | • | |
| interference | interference level for different (Channel bandwidth, SCS) configurations. The value of factor is 66 | | | | | |

10.6 Blocking characteristics

RBs x 60 kHz SCS x 12, i.e. 47520 kHz.

10.6.1 General

The blocking characteristic is a measure of the receiver's ability to receive a wanted signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an unwanted interferer on frequencies other than those of the spurious response or the adjacent channels, without this unwanted input signal causing a degradation of the performance of the receiver beyond a specified limit. The blocking performance shall apply at all frequencies except those at which a spurious response occurs.

The requirement applies at the RIB when the AoA of the incident wave of the wanted signal and the interfering signal are both from the direction where peak gain is achieved.

The wanted and interfering signals apply to all supported polarizations, under the assumption of polarization match.

10.6.2 Minimum requirement for Mobile VSAT

In-band blocking is a measure of a receiver's ability to receive a NR signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an interferer at a given frequency offset from the centre frequency of the assigned channel.

For mobile VSAT, the throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annexes A.3.2.1.2 and A.3.2.1.3 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 10.6.2-1. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 10.6.2-1: In band blocking requirements

| Rx parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|--|-------|---|---|---|---|--|
| - | | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz | |
| Power in Transmission Bandwidth Configuration | dBm | EIS _{REFSENS_50M} + 6 dB + 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SCS x 12 / factor) | | | | |
| BWInterferer | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| P _{Interferer} for bands n512, n511 | dBm | EIS _{REFSENS_50M} + 28.7 + 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SCS x 12 / factor) | | | | |
| Finterferer (offset) | MHz | ≤ -100 & ≥ 100 NOTE 5 | ≤ -200 & ≥ 200 NOTE 5 | ≤ -400 & ≥ 400 NOTE 5 | ≤ -800 & ≥ 800 NOTE 5 | |
| Finterferer | MHz | F _{DL_low} + 25 to F _{DL_high} - 25 | F _{DL_low} + 50 to F _{DL_high} - 50 | F _{DL_low} + 100 to F _{DL_high} - 100 | F _{DL_low} + 200 to F _{DL_high} - 200 | |

- NOTE 1: The interferer consists of the Reference measurement channel specified in Annex A.3.3 [15] with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.2.1 [15] and set-up according to Annex C.
- NOTE 2: EISREFSENS_50M declared by the vendor is an integer value in the range specified in Table 10.3.2-2 for different types of NTN VSAT.
- NOTE 3: The wanted signal consists of the reference measurement channel specified in Annex A.3.2 with one sided dynamic OCNG pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1 and set-up according to Annex C.
- NOTE 4: Void
- NOTE 5: The absolute value of the interferer offset F_{Interferer} (offset) shall be further adjusted (CEIL(|F_{Interferer}(offset)|/SCS) + 0.5)*SCS MHz with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wanted signal in MHz. Wanted and interferer signal have same SCS.
- NOTE 6: Finterferer range values for unwanted modulated interfering signals are interferer center frequencies.
- NOTE 7: The transmitter shall be set to [4 dB] below the P_{UMAX,f,c} as defined in clause 9.2.3, with uplink configuration specified in Table 10.3.2-1.
- NOTE 8: The "factor" represents the normalized factor to scale EIS for different (Channel bandwidth, SCS) configurations. The value of factor is 66 RBs x 60 kHz SCS x 12, i.e. 47520 kHz.

10.6.3 Minimum requirement for Fixed VSAT

In-band blocking is a measure of a receiver's ability to receive a NR signal at its assigned channel frequency in the presence of an interferer at a given frequency offset from the centre frequency of the assigned channel.

For fixed VSAT, the throughput shall be \geq 95 % of the maximum throughput of the reference measurement channels as specified in Annexes A.2.3.2 and A.3.3.2 (with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern OP.1 FDD for the DL-signal as described in Annex A.5.1.1) with parameters specified in Table 10.6.3-1. The requirement is verified with the test metric of EIS (Link=RX beam peak direction, Meas=Link angle).

Table 10.6.3-1: In band blocking requirements

| Rx parameter | Units | Channel bandwidth | | | | |
|--|-------|---|---|---|---|--|
| | | 50 MHz | 100 MHz | 200 MHz | 400 MHz | |
| Power in Transmission Bandwidth Configuration | dBm | EIS _R | EFSENS_50M + 6 dB + 10k | og ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SCS x 12 / fa | actor) | |
| BWInterferer | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 | |
| P _{Interferer} for bands n512, n511, n510 | dBm | EIS _{REFSENS_50M} + 28.7 + 10log ₁₀ (N _{RB} x SCS x 12 / factor) | | | | |
| Finterferer (offset) | MHz | ≤ -100 & ≥ 100 NOTE 5 | ≤ -200 & ≥ 200 NOTE 5 | ≤ -400 & ≥ 400 NOTE 5 | ≤ -800 & ≥ 800 NOTE 5 | |
| Finterferer | MHz | F _{DL_low} + 25 to F _{DL_high} - 25 | F _{DL_low} + 50 to F _{DL_high} - 50 | F _{DL_low} + 100 to F _{DL_high} - 100 | F _{DL_low} + 200 to F _{DL_high} - 200 | |

- NOTE 1: The interferer consists of the Reference measurement channel specified in Annex A.3.3 [15] with one sided dynamic OCNG Pattern as described in Annex A.5.2.1 [15] and set-up according to Annex C.
- NOTE 2: EISREFSENS_50M declared by the vendor is an integer value in the range specified in Table 10.3.2-2 for different types of NTN VSAT.
- NOTE 3: The wanted signal consists of the reference measurement channel specified in Annex A.3.2 with one sided dynamic OCNG pattern as described in Annex A.5.1.1 and set-up according to Annex C.
- NOTE 4: Void
- NOTE 5: The absolute value of the interferer offset F_{Interferer} (offset) shall be further adjusted (CEIL(|F_{Interferer}(offset)|/SCS) + 0.5)*SCS MHz with SCS the sub-carrier spacing of the wanted signal in MHz. Wanted and interferer signal have same SCS.
- NOTE 6: Finterferer range values for unwanted modulated interfering signals are interferer center frequencies.
- NOTE 7: The transmitter shall be set to [4 dB] below the P_{UMAX,f,c} as defined in clause 9.2.3, with uplink configuration specified in Table 10.3.2-1.
- NOTE 8: The "factor" represents the normalized factor to scale EIS for different (Channel bandwidth, SCS) configurations. The value of factor is 66 RBs x 60 kHz SCS x 12, i.e. 47520 kHz.

10.7 Spurious emissions

The requirement is not applicable in this version of the specification.

10.8 Receiver antenna off-axis performance

The following regional requirements are applicable to NTN VSAT operating in band n512 towards geostationary satellite orbit.

The receiver antenna off-axis gain of each co-polarized components in any direction φ degrees from the antenna main beam shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 10.8-1.

Table 10.8-1: Off-axis Co-polarized gain limit

| | φ value (degree) | gain (dBi) | | | |
|--|---|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| | φ _{min} ≤ φ ≤ 48° | $32 - 25\log_{10}(\varphi)$ | | | |
| | 48° ≤ φ ≤ 85° | -10 | | | |
| 85° ≤ φ ≤ 180° | | 0 | | | |
| NOTE: | NOTE: $\phi_{min} = 1^{\circ} \text{ or } 100 \lambda/D \text{ (degrees) whichever is the greater, for D/}\lambda \geq 50.$ | | | | |
| $\phi_{min} = 2^{\circ}$ or $114(D/\lambda)^{-1.09}$ (degrees) whichever is the greater, for $D/\lambda < 50$. where D is the nominal diameter of the antenna | | | | | |

The receiver antenna off-axis gain of each cross-polarized components in any direction φ degrees from the antenna main beam shall not exceed the levels specified in Table 10.8-2.

Table 10.8-2: Off-axis Cross-polarized gain limit

| φ value (degree) | | gain (dBi) | | | |
|------------------|---|------------------------------|--|--|--|
| | φ _r ≤ φ ≤ 7° | 23 – 20log ₁₀ (φ) | | | |
| NOTE: | NOTE: $\varphi_r = 1^\circ \text{ or } 100\lambda/D \text{ (degrees) whichever is the greater}$ | | | | |
| | where D is the nominal diameter of the antenna | | | | |

11 Demodulation performance requirements (Radiated requirements)

11.1 General

11.1.2 Applicability of minimum requirements

The radiated minimum requirements specified in this specification shall be met in all applicable scenarios for FR2-NTN.

11.1.3 Radiated requirements

11.1.3.1 Introduction

The requirements are defined for the following modes:

- Mode 1: Conditions with external noise source
 - Wanted signal with power level Es is transmitted.
 - External white noise source with power spectral density Noc is used.
 - Es and Noc levels are selected to achieve target SNR as described in Clause 11.1.3.3.

11.1.3.2 Reference point

The reference point for SNR, Es and Noc of DL signal is the UE antenna connector or connectors.

11.1.3.3 SNR definition

For Mode 1 conditions UE demodulation and CSI requirements, the Minimum performance requirement in clause 11 are defined relative to the baseband SNR level SNR_{BB}. The SNR at the reference point is defined as

$$SNR = SNR_{BB} + \Delta_{BB}$$

where Δ_{BB} is specified in clause 4.5.3.

The reference point SNR is defined as:

$$SNR = \frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N_{RX}} E_{S}^{(j)}}{\sum_{i=1}^{N_{RX}} N_{oc}^{(j)}}$$

- N_{RX} denotes the number of receiver reference points, and the super script receiver reference point j.
- The above SNR definition assumes that the REs are not precoded, and does not account for any gain which can be associated to the precoding operation.
- Unless otherwise stated, the SNR refers to the SSS wanted signal.

- The downlink SSS transmit power is defined as the linear average over the power contributions in [W] of all resource elements that carry the SSS within the operating system bandwidth.
- The power ratio of other wanted signals to the SSS is defined in Clause C.3.1.

11.1.3.4 Noc

11.1.3.4.1 Introduction

This clause describes the Noc power level for Mode 1 conditions conducted testing of demodulation and CSI requirements.

11.1.3.4.2 Noc for operating bands in FR2-NTN

Unless otherwise stated, a fixed Noc power level of -145 dBm/Hz shall be used for all operating bands.

11.2 Demodulation performance requirements

11.2.1 General

11.2.1.1 Applicability of requirements

11.2.1.1.1 General

The minimum performance requirements are applicable to all FR2-NTN operating bands defined in clause 5.2.

If same test is listed for different UE features/capabilities in Clauses 11.2.1.1.2, then this test shall apply for UEs which support all corresponding UE features/capabilities.

11.2.1.1.2 Applicability of requirements for optional UE features

The performance requirements in Table 11.2.1.1.2-1 shall apply for UEs which support optional UE features only.

Table 11.2.1.1.2-1: Requirements applicability for optional UE features

| UE feature/capability [11] Test type | | Test list | Applicability notes | |
|--|---------|-----------|--|---|
| NR NTN access (nonTerrestrialNetwork-r17) | FR2-NTN | PDCCH | Clause 11.2.3.1.1.1 (Test 1-1, Test 1-2) | |
| NP NTN congris cupport | FR2-NTN | PDSCH | Clause 11.2.2.1.1.1 (Test 2-1, Test 2-2, Test 2-3, Test 2-4) | The requirements apply only when <i>ntn-ScenarioSupport-r17</i> is "gso" |
| NR NTN scenario support (ntn-ScenarioSupport-r17) | FR2-NTN | PDSCH | Clause 11.2.2.1.1.1 (Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3, Test 1-4) | The requirements apply only when <i>ntn-ScenarioSupport-r17</i> is "ngso" or is not configured. |
| Increasing the number of HARQ processes (max-HARQ-ProcessNumber-r17) | FR2-NTN | PDSCH | Clause 11.2.1.2.2.1 (Test 1-3, 2-3) | |
| Disabled HARQ feedback for downlink transmission (harq-FeedbackDisabled-r17) | FR2-NTN | PDSCH | Clause 11.2.1.2.2.1 (Test 1-4, 2-4) | |

11.2.2 PDSCH demodulation requirements

The parameters specified in Table 11.2.2-1 are valid for all PDSCH tests unless otherwise stated.

Table 11.2.2-1: Common test parameters

| | Parameter | Unit | Value |
|-------------------------|--|---------|---|
| PDSCH transmission | scheme | | Transmission scheme 1 |
| Carrier | Offset between Point A and the lowest usable subcarrier on this carrier (Note 2) | RBs | 0 |
| configuration | Subcarrier spacing | kHz | 120 |
| | Cyclic prefix | | Normal |
| | RB offset | RBs | 0 |
| DL BWP configuration #1 | Number of contiguous PRB | PRBs | Maximum transmission bandwidth configuration as specified in clause 5.3.2 of TS 38.101-2 [15] for tested channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing |
| Common serving | Physical Cell ID | | 0 |
| cell parameters | SSB position in burst | | First SSB in Slot #0 |
| | SSB periodicity | ms | 20 |
| | Slots for PDCCH monitoring | 0 1 1 | Each slot |
| | Symbols with PDCCH Number of PRBs in CORESET | Symbols | 0 Table 7.2-2 of 38.101-4 for tested channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing |
| PDCCH configuration | Number of PDCCH candidates and aggregation levels | | 1/AL8 |
| g | CCE-to-REG mapping type | | Non-interleaved |
| | DCI format | | 1_1 |
| | TCI state | | TCI state #1 |
| | PDCCH & PDCCH DMRS Precoding configuration | | No precoding |
| Cross carrier schedu | | + | Not configured |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | k ₀ =0 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | $l_0 = 6$ for CSI-RS resource 1 and 3 $l_0 = 10$ for CSI-RS resource 2 and 4 |
| | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) CDM Type | | 1 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 'No CDM' for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| CSI-RS for tracking | Density (p) | | 3 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| 3 | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 160 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4 |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 80 for CSI-RS resource 1 and 2 81 for CSI-RS resource 3 and 4 |
| | Frequency Occupation | | Start PRB 0 Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 |
| | QCL info | | TCI state #0 |
| | Row index (Note 3) | | 3 for 2 CSI-RS ports and 5 for 4 CSI- RS ports |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | k ₀ = 0 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | l ₀ = 12 |
| NZP CSI-RS for | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) | | 1 |
| CSI acquisition | CDM Type | 1 | No CDM |
| | Density (ρ) | 01. | 1 |
| | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 160 |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 0 Start PRB 0 |
| | Frequency Occupation QCL info | | Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 TCI state #1 |
| | Row index (Note 3) | 1 | 1CI state #1 |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | k ₀ = 4 |
| ZP CSI-RS for CSI | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | I ₀ = 12 |
| acquisition | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) | 1 | 4 |
| | CDM Type | | 'FD-CDM2' |
| | Density (p) | | 1 |
| | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 160 |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 0 |

| | Frequency Occ | upation | | Start PRB 0 Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|
| | First subcarrier CSI-RS | index in the PRB used for | | k ₀ = 0 for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB used for CSI-RS | | | I ₀ = 8 for CSI-RS resource 1 I ₀ = 9 for CSI-RS resource 2 |
| | Number of CSI | -RS ports (X) | | 1 for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| | CDM Type | rte perte (rt) | | 'No CDM' for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| ZP CSI-RS for CSI | Density (ρ) | | | 3 for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| acquisition | CSI-RS periodi | citv | Slots | 160 for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| | CSI-RS offset | - 9 | Slots | 0 for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| | | | | Start PRB 0 |
| | Frequency Occ | supation | | Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 |
| | Repetition | | | ON |
| | QCL info | | | TCI state #1 |
| | Antenna ports i | ndexes | | {1000} for Rank 1 tests |
| DD COLL DA DO | Position of the | first DMRS for PDSCH | | |
| PDSCH DMRS | mapping type A | | | 2 |
| configuration | Number of PDSCH DMRS CDM group(s) | | | 44 5 44 |
| | without data | | | 1 for Rank 1 |
| | Type 1 QCL | SSB index | | SSB #0 |
| TOI -4-4- #0 | information | QCL Type | | Type C |
| TCI state #0 | Type 2 QCL | SSB index | | SSB #0 |
| | information | QCL Type | | Type D |
| | Type 1 QCL information | CSI-RS resource | | CSI-RS resource 1 from 'CSI-RS for tracking' configuration |
| | | QCL Type | | Type A |
| TCI state #1 | | | | CSI-RS resource 1 from 'CSI-RS for |
| | Type 2 QCL | CSI-RS resource | | tracking' configuration |
| | information | QCL Type | | Type D |
| PT-RS configuration | 1 | 1 QOL 1980 | | Not configured |
| Maximum number of | code block group | os for ACK/NACK feedback | | 1 |
| Maximum number of code block groups for ACK/NACK feedback Maximum number of HARQ transmission | | | | 4 |
| HARQ ACK/NACK bundling | | | | Not configured |
| Redundancy version coding sequence | | | | {0,2,3,1} |
| PDSCH & PDSCH DMRS Precoding configuration | | | | No precoding |
| | | | | OP.1 FDD as defined in Annex |
| Symbols for all unused REs | | | | A.5.1.1 of 38.101-4 |
| Physical signals, channels mapping and precoding | | | | As specified in Annex B.4.1 of 38.101- |
| Note 1: UE assum | nes that the TCI s | tate for the PDSCH is identicated | al to the TO | I state applied for the PDCCH |

Note 1: UE assumes that the TCI state for the PDSCH is identical to the TCI state applied for the PDCCH transmission

Note 2: Point A coincides with minimum guard band as specified in Table 5.3.3-1 from TS 38.101-2 [15] for tested channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing.

Note 3: Refer to Table 7.4.1.5.3-1 in [9]

11.2.2.1 1Rx requirements

11.2.2.1.1 FDD

11.2.2.1.1.1 Minimum requirements for PDSCH Mapping Type A

The performance requirements are specified in Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-3 with the addition of test parameters in Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-2 and the downlink physical channel setup according to Annex A.3.

The test purposes are specified in Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-1.

Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-1: Tests purpose

| Purpose | Test index |
|---|--|
| Verify the PDSCH mapping Type A normal performance | 1-1, 1-2, 1-3, 1-4, 2-1, 2-2, 2-3, 2-4 |
| under 2 receive antenna conditions and with different | |
| channel models and MCS | |

Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-2: Test parameters

| | Parameter | Unit | Value |
|---------------------------------------|---|-------------|--|
| Duplex mode | | | FDD |
| Active DL BWP index | X | | 1 |
| | Mapping type | | Type A |
| | k0 | | 0 |
| | Starting symbol (S) | | 1 |
| | Length (L) | | 13 |
| | PDSCH aggregation factor | | 1 |
| PDSCH | PRB bundling type | | Static |
| configuration | PRB bundling size | | 2 |
| | Resource allocation type | | Type 0 |
| | RBG size | | Config2 |
| | VRB-to-PRB mapping type | | Non-interleaved |
| | VRB-to-PRB mapping interleaver bundle size | | N/A |
| | DMRS Type | | Type 1 |
| PDSCH DMRS | Number of additional DMRS | | 1 |
| configuration | Maximum number of OFDM symbols for DL front loaded DMRS | | 1 |
| CCI DC for tracking | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 160 for CSI-RS resource 1,2,3,4. |
| CSI-RS for tracking | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 80 for CSI-RS resource 1 and 2 81 for CSI-RS resource 3 and 4. |
| Number of HARQ Pr | ocesses | | 16 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2 32 for Test 1-3 4 with feedback disabled, 12 with feedback enabled in 16 HARQ processes for Test 1-4 in which 4 disabled processes are randomly selected at test configuration |
| The number of slots HARQ-ACK informat | between PDSCH and corresponding ion | | 80 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3 and Test 1-4 2080 for Test 2-1, Test 2-2, Test 2-3 and Test 2-4 |
| cellSpecificKoffset-r | 17 (Note 1) | Slots/15kHz | 64 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3 and Test 1-4 2064 for Test 2-1, Test 2-2, Test 2-3 and Test 2-4 |
| Maximum number of Note 1: The numb | HARQ transmission | | 4 for Test 1-1, Test 1-2, Test 1-3 1 for Test 1-4 (re-Tx disabled for all HARQ processes) |

slots specified by cellSpecificKoffset-r17.

Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-3: Minimum performance for Rank 1

| | | Bandwidth | | | Correlation | Reference va | alue |
|--------------|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------------------------|-------------|
| Test num. | Reference channel | (MHz) / Subcarrier spacing (kHz) | Modulation format and code rate | Propagation condition | matrix and antenna configuration | Fraction of maximum throughput (%) | SNR (dB) |
| 1-1 | R.PDSCH.3-3.1 FDD | 200 / 120 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 3.5 |
| 1-2 | R.PDSCH.3-4.1 FDD | 200 / 120 | 16QAM, 0.48 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 11.2 |
| 1-3 | R.PDSCH.3-3.1 FDD | 200 / 120 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 3.5 |
| 1-4 | R.PDSCH.3-3.1 FDD (Note 1) | 200 / 120 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 4.2 |
| Note1: | The Maximum throu | ghput is based | on the HARQ | processes with H | ARQ feedback enat | oled. | |

Table 11.2.2.1.1.1-4: Minimum performance for Rank 1

| | | Bandwidth | | | Correlation | Reference value | | |
|--------------|-------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|-----------------------|--|------------------------------------|-------------|--|
| Test num. | Reference channel | (MHz) / Subcarrier spacing (kHz) | Modulation format and code rate | Propagation condition | matrix and antenna configuration | Fraction of maximum throughput (%) | SNR (dB) | |
| 2-1 | R.PDSCH.3-3.1 FDD | 200 / 120 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 3.5 | |
| 2-2 | R.PDSCH.3-4.1 FDD | 200 / 120 | 16QAM, 0.48 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 11.2 | |
| 2-3 | R.PDSCH.3-3.1 FDD | 200 / 120 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 3.5 | |
| 2-4 | R.PDSCH.3-3.1 FDD (Note 1) | 200 / 120 | QPSK, 0.30 | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 | 70 | 4.2 | |
| Note1: | The Maximum throu | ghput is based | on the HARQ | processes with H | ARQ feedback enal | oled. | | |

11.2.3 PDCCH demodulation requirements

The receiver characteristics of the PDCCH are determined by the probability of miss-detection of the Downlink Scheduling Grant (Pm-dsg).

The parameters specified in Table 11.2.3-1 are valid for all PDCCH tests unless otherwise stated.

Table 11.2.3-1: Common test Parameters

| | Parameter | Unit | Value |
|-------------------------|--|-------|--|
| Carrier | Offset between Point A and the | | 0 |
| configuration | lowest usable subcarrier on this | | |
| | carrier (Note 1) | | |
| DL BWP configuration #1 | Cyclic prefix | | Normal |
| Common | Physical Cell ID | | 0 |
| serving cell | SSB position in burst | | First SSB in Slot #0 |
| parameters | SSB periodicity | ms | 20 |
| | Slots for PDCCH monitoring | | Each slot |
| | Number of PDCCH candidates | | 1 |
| PDCCH configuration | Frequency domain resource allocation for CORESET | | Start from RB = 0 with contiguous RB |
| | | | allocation |
| | TCI state | | TCI state #1 |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB used for CSI-RS (k0) | | 0 |
| | | | CSI-RS resource 1: |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB | | CSI-RS resource 2: 8 |
| | used for CSI-RS (I0) | | CSI-RS resource 3: |
| | | | CSI-RS resource 4: |
| CSI-RS for | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) | | 1 |
| tracking | CDM Type | | No CDM |
| liacking | Density (ρ) | | 3 |
| | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | 160 |
| | COI-ICO periodicity | 31013 | 80 for CSI-RS |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | resource 1 and 2 81 for CSI-RS |
| | | | resource 3 and 4 |
| | Frequency Occupation | | Start PRB 0 Number of PRB = ceil(BWP size/4)*4 |
| | QCL info | | TCI state #0 |
| | First subcarrier index in the PRB | | |
| | used for CSI-RS (k0) | | 0 |
| | First OFDM symbol in the PRB | | CSI-RS resource 1: |
| | used for CSI-RS (I0) | | CSI-RS resource 2: |
| | Number of CSI-RS ports (X) | | 1 |
| | CDM Type | | No CDM |
| NZP CSI-RS for | Density (ρ) | | 3 |
| beam | , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , | | 120 kHz SCS: 160 |
| refinement | CSI-RS periodicity | Slots | for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| | CSI-RS offset | Slots | 0 for CSI-RS resource 1,2 |
| | | | Start PRB 0 |
| | Frequency Occupation | | Number of PRB = |
| | 1 | | ceil(BWP size/4) *4 |
| | Repetition | | ON |
| | QCL info | Ì | TCI state #1 |
| | , ===• | 1 | |

| PDCCH & PDCCH | I DMRS Precod | ding configuration | For number of TX = 1: No precoding; For number of TX > 1: Single Panel Type I, Randomized precoder selection for every REG bundle and updated per slot with equal probability of each applicable i ₁ /i ₂ combination or codebook index, chosen from section 5.2.2.2.1 of TS 38.214 [12]. | | | | | |
|--------------------|--|--------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Type 1 QCL | SSB index | SSB #0 | | | | | |
| TCI state #0 | information | QCL Type | Type C | | | | | |
| TCI state #0 | Type 2 QCL | SSB index | SSB #0 | | | | | |
| | information | QCL Type | Type D | | | | | |
| | Type 1 QCL information | CSI-RS resource | CSI-RS resource 1 from 'CSI-RS for tracking' configuration | | | | | |
| | | QCL Type | Type A | | | | | |
| TCI state #1 | Type 2 QCL information | CSI-RS resource | CSI-RS resource 1 from 'CSI-RS for tracking' configuration | | | | | |
| | | QCL Type | Type D | | | | | |
| Symbols for all un | used REs | | OP.1 FDD as defined in Annex A.5.1.1 | | | | | |
| corresponding HA | The number of slots between PDSCH and corresponding HARQ-ACK information | | | | | | | |
| Note 1: Point A | coincides with | minimum guard band | as specified in Table 5.3.3-1 | | | | | |

Note 1: Point A coincides with minimum guard band as specified in Table 5.3.3-1 from TS 38.101-1 [6] for tested channel bandwidth and subcarrier spacing.

Note 2: The high layer parameter *precoderGranularity* equals to *sameAsREG-bundle* as defined in clause 7.4.1.3 of TS 38.211 [9]

11.2.3.1 1RX requirements

The parameters specified in Table 11.2.3.1-1 are valid for all PDCCH requirements unless otherwise stated.

Table 11.2.3.1-1: Test Parameters

| Parameter | Unit | Value |
|-------------------------|------|-------------|
| CCE to REG mapping type | | Interleaved |
| REG bundle size | | 2 |
| Interleaver size | | 3 |
| Shift index | | 0 |

11.2.3.1.1 Minimum requirements with 1Tx Antenna

For the parameters specified in Table 11.2.3.1-1, the average probability of a missed downlink scheduling grant (Pmdsg) shall be below the specified value in Table 11.2.3.1.1-1. The downlink physical setup is in accordance with Annex C.5.1.

Table 11.2.3.1.1-1: Minimum performance requirements with 1 Tx Antenna

| Test | Band | CORE | CORESET | Aggrega | Poforonoo | Propagation | Antenna configuration | | rence lue |
|------------|----------------|-----------|----------|---------------|-----------------------|--|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| numb er | width (MHz) | SET RB | duration | tion level | Reference Channel | Propagation Condition and correlation Matrix | | Pm- dsg (%) | SNR _B (dB) |
| 1-1 | 200 | 132 | 1 | 8 | R.PDCCH. 1-1.1 FDD | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 Low | 1 | 4.6 |
| 1-2 | 200 | 132 | 2 | 16 | R.PDCCH. 1-1.2 FDD | NTN-TDLC5- 1200 | 1x1 Low | 1 | 3.2 |

Annex A (normative): Measurement channels

A.1 General

A.1.1 Throughput definition

The throughput values defined in the measurement channels specified in Annex A, are calculated and are valid per codeword. For multi-codeword transmissions, the throughput referenced in the minimum requirements is the sum of throughputs of all codewords.

A.2 UL reference measurement channels

A.2.1 General

The measurement channels in the subclause A2.2 are defined to derive the requirements in clause 6 (Transmitter Characteristics) and clause 7 (Receiver Characteristics). And the measurement channels in the subclause A2.3 are defined to derive the requirements in clause 9 (Radiated Transmitter Characteristics) and clause 10 (Radiated Receiver Characteristics). The measurement channels represent example configurations of physical channels for different data rates.

The measurement channels in the following clauses are applicable only to FDD.

A.2.2 Reference measurement channels for FR1-NTN FDD

A.2.2.1 DFT-s-OFDM Pi/2-BPSK

Table A.2.2.1-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM Pi/2-BPSK

| Paramete | Allocate | DFT-s- | Modulatio | MCS | Payloa | Transpor | LDPC | Number | Total | Total |
|----------|--------------------|----------|-----------|-------|--------|----------|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| r | d | OFDM | n | Index | d size | t block | Base | of code | number | modulate |
| | resourc | Symbol | | (Note | | CRC | Graph | blocks | of bits | d |
| | e blocks | s per | | 2) | | | | per slot | per slot | symbols |
| | (L _{CRB)} | slot | | | | | | (Note 3) | | per slot |
| | | (Note 1) | | | | | | | | |
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 24 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 132 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 160 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 660 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 288 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1188 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 320 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1320 | 1320 |
| | 12 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 384 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1584 | 1584 |
| | 15 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 480 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1980 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 576 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2376 | 2376 |
| | 24 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 768 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3168 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 808 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3300 | 3300 |
| | 30 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 984 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3960 | 3960 |
| | 32 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1032 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4224 | 4224 |
| | 36 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1128 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4752 | 4752 |
| | 45 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1416 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5940 | 5940 |
| | 50 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1544 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6600 | 6600 |
| | 60 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1864 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 7920 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 2024 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 8448 |
| | 75 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 2408 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 9900 | 9900 |
| | 80 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 2472 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 10560 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 2536 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 10692 | 10692 |
| | 90 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 2792 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 11880 | 11880 |
| | 100 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 3104 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 13200 | 13200 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.2.2 DFT-s-OFDM QPSK

Table A.2.2.2-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM QPSK

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 48 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 264 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 256 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1320 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 456 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2376 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 504 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2640 | 1320 |
| | 12 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 608 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3168 | 1584 |
| | 15 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 768 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3960 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 928 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4752 | 2376 |
| | 20 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1032 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5280 | 2640 |
| | 24 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1192 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6336 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1256 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6600 | 3300 |
| | 30 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1544 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 7920 | 3960 |
| | 32 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1608 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 4224 |
| | 36 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1800 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 9504 | 4752 |
| | 45 | 11 | QPKS | 2 | 2208 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 11880 | 5940 |
| | 50 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2472 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 13200 | 6600 |
| | 60 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3104 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 15840 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3240 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 16896 | 8448 |
| | 75 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3752 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 19800 | 9900 |
| | 80 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3976 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 21120 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 4040 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 21384 | 10692 |
| | 90 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 4488 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 23760 | 11880 |
| | 100 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 5000 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 26400 | 13200 |

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.2.3 DFT-s-OFDM 16QAM

Table A.2.2.3-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM 16QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 176 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 528 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 888 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2640 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 1608 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4752 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 1800 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5280 | 1320 |
| | 12 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 2088 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6336 | 1584 |
| | 15 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 2664 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 7920 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 3240 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 9504 | 2376 |
| | 24 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 4224 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 12672 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 4352 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 13200 | 3300 |
| | 30 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 5248 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 15840 | 3960 |
| | 32 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 5632 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 16896 | 4224 |
| | 36 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 6272 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 19008 | 4752 |
| | 45 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 7808 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 23760 | 5940 |
| | 50 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 8712 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 26400 | 6600 |
| | 60 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 10504 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 31680 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 11272 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 33792 | 8448 |
| | 75 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 13064 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 39600 | 9900 |
| | 80 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 14088 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 42240 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 14088 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 42768 | 10692 |
| | 90 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 15880 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 47520 | 11880 |
| | 100 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 17424 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 52800 | 13200 |

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.2.4 DFT-s-OFDM 64QAM

Table A.2.2.4-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM 64QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 408 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 792 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 2024 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3960 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 3624 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 7128 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 3968 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 7920 | 1320 |
| | 12 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 4736 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 9504 | 1584 |
| | 15 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 6016 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 11880 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 7168 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 14256 | 2376 |
| | 24 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 9480 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 19008 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 9992 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 19800 | 3300 |
| | 30 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 12040 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 23760 | 3960 |
| | 32 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 12808 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 25344 | 4224 |
| | 36 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 14344 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 28512 | 4752 |
| | 45 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 17928 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 35640 | 5940 |
| | 50 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 19968 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 39600 | 6600 |
| | 60 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 24072 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 47520 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 25608 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 50688 | 8448 |
| | 75 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 30216 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 59400 | 9900 |
| | 80 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 31752 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 63360 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 32264 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 64152 | 10692 |
| | 90 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 35856 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 71280 | 11880 |
| | 100 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 17424 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 52800 | 13200 |

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.2.5 DFT-s-OFDM 256QAM

Table A.2.2.5-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM 256QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 704 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1056 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 3496 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5280 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 6272 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 9504 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 7040 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 10560 | 1320 |
| | 12 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 8456 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 12672 | 1584 |
| | 15 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 10504 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 15840 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 12552 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 19008 | 2376 |
| | 24 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 16896 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 25344 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 17424 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 26400 | 3300 |
| | 30 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 21000 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 31680 | 3960 |
| | 32 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 22536 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 33792 | 4224 |
| | 36 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 25104 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 38016 | 4752 |
| | 45 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 31752 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 47520 | 5940 |
| | 50 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 34816 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 52800 | 6600 |
| | 60 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 42016 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 63360 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 45096 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 67584 | 8448 |
| | 75 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 53288 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 79200 | 9900 |
| | 80 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 56368 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 84480 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 57376 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 85536 | 10692 |
| | 90 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 63528 | 24 | 1 | 8 | 95040 | 11880 |
| | 100 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 69672 | 24 | 1 | 9 | 105600 | 13200 |

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-2 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.2.6 CP-OFDM QPSK

Table A.2.2.6-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM QPSK

| Paramet | Allocat | CP- | Modulati | MCS | Payloa | Transp | LDPC | Numb | Total | Total |
|---------|---------|--------|----------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|-------|----------|
| er | ed | OFDM | on | Index | d size | ort . | Base | er of | numbe | modulat |
| | resourc | Symbo | | (Note | | block | Graph | code | r of | ed |
| | е | Is per | | 2) | | CRC | - | blocks | bits | symbols |
| | blocks | slot | | • | | | | per | per | per slot |
| | (Lcrb) | (Note | | | | | | slot | slot | |
| | | 1) | | | | | | (Note | | |
| | | | | | | | | 3) | | |
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 48 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 264 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 256 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1320 | 660 |
| | 6 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 304 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1584 | 792 |
| | 9 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 456 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2376 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 504 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2640 | 1320 |
| | 11 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 552 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2904 | 1452 |
| | 12 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 608 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3168 | 1584 |
| | 13 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 672 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3432 | 1716 |
| | 15 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 768 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3960 | 1980 |
| | 16 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 808 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4224 | 2112 |
| | 18 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 928 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4752 | 2376 |
| | 19 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 984 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5016 | 2508 |
| | 24 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1192 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6336 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1256 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6600 | 3300 |
| | 26 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1288 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 6864 | 3432 |
| | 31 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1544 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8184 | 4092 |
| | 33 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1672 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8712 | 4356 |
| | 38 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1928 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 10032 | 5016 |
| | 39 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2024 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 10296 | 5148 |
| | 40 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2024 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 10560 | 5280 |
| | 47 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2408 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 12408 | 6204 |
| | 51 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2536 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 13464 | 6732 |
| | 52 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2600 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 13728 | 6864 |
| | 53 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2664 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 13992 | 6996 |
| | 54 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2664 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 14256 | 7128 |
| | 61 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3104 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 16104 | 8052 |
| | 65 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3240 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 17160 | 8580 |
| | 67 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3368 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 17688 | 8844 |
| | 68 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3368 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 17952 | 8976 |
| | 78 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3848 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 20592 | 10296 |
| | 79 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3912 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 20856 | 10428 |
| | 80 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3976 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 21120 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 4040 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 21384 | 10692 |
| | 93 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 4616 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 24552 | 12276 |
| | 95 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 4744 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 25080 | 12540 |
| | 106 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 5256 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 27984 | 13992 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

A.2.2.7 CP-OFDM 16QAM

Table A.2.2.7-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM 16QAM

| er ed OFDM on Index d size ort block Graph code r c blocks slot (LCRB) (Note | f ed s symbols r per slot |
|--|---------------------------------|
| e Is per 2) CRC blocks bit per per per slot slot slot slot slot slot slot slot | s symbols r per slot |
| blocks slot per per per per slot slot slot slot slot slot slot slot | r per slot |
| (LCRB) (Note slot slot | |
| | ot |
| | |
| 1) (Note | |
| 3) | |
| Unit Bits Bits Bit | |
| 1 11 16QAM 10 176 16 2 1 52 | |
| 5 11 16QAM 10 888 16 2 1 264 | |
| 6 11 16QAM 10 1064 16 2 1 316 | |
| 9 11 16QAM 10 1608 16 2 1 475 | |
| 10 11 16QAM 10 1800 16 2 1 528 | |
| 11 11 16QAM 10 1928 16 2 1 580 | |
| 12 11 16QAM 10 2088 16 2 1 633 | |
| 13 11 16QAM 10 2280 16 2 1 686 | |
| 15 11 16QAM 10 2664 16 2 1 792 | |
| 16 11 16QAM 10 2792 16 2 1 844 | |
| 18 11 16QAM 10 3240 16 2 1 950 | |
| 19 11 16QAM 10 3368 16 2 1 100 | |
| 24 11 16QAM 10 4224 24 1 1 126 | |
| 25 11 16QAM 10 4352 24 1 1 132 | |
| 26 11 16QAM 10 4480 24 1 1 137 | |
| 31 11 16QAM 10 5376 24 1 1 163 | 68 4092 |
| 33 11 16QAM 10 5760 24 1 1 174 | |
| 38 11 16QAM 10 6656 24 1 1 200 | |
| 39 11 16QAM 10 6784 24 1 1 205 | 92 5148 |
| 40 11 16QAM 10 7040 24 1 1 211 | |
| 47 11 16QAM 10 8192 24 1 1 248 | |
| 51 11 16QAM 10 8968 24 1 2 269 | 28 6732 |
| 52 11 16QAM 10 9224 24 1 2 274 | |
| 53 11 16QAM 10 9224 24 1 2 279 | |
| 54 11 16QAM 10 9480 24 1 2 285 | |
| 61 11 16QAM 10 10760 24 1 2 322 | |
| 65 11 16QAM 10 11272 24 1 2 343 | 20 8580 |
| 67 11 16QAM 10 11784 24 1 2 353 | |
| 68 11 16QAM 10 11784 24 1 2 359 | 04 8976 |
| 78 11 16QAM 10 13576 24 1 2 411 | |
| 79 11 16QAM 10 13832 24 1 2 417 | 12 10428 |
| 80 11 16QAM 10 14088 24 1 2 422 | |
| 81 11 16QAM 10 14088 24 1 2 427 | |
| 93 11 16QAM 10 16392 24 1 2 494 | 04 12276 |
| 95 11 16QMA 10 16392 24 1 2 501 | |
| 106 11 16QAM 10 18432 24 1 3 559 | |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

A.2.2.8 CP-OFDM 64QAM

Table A.2.2.8-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM 64QAM

| Paramet | Allocat | CP- | Modulati | MCS | Payloa | Transp | LDPC | Numb | Total | Total |
|---------|--------------------|--------|----------|-------|--------|--------|-------|---------------|-------|----------|
| er | ed | OFDM | on | Index | d size | ort | Base | er of | numbe | modulat |
| | resourc | Symbo | | (Note | | block | Graph | code | r of | ed |
| | е | Is per | | 2) | | CRC | | blocks | bits | symbols |
| | blocks | slot | | | | | | per | per | per slot |
| | (L _{CRB)} | (Note | | | | | | slot (Note | slot | |
| | | 1) | | | | | | | | |
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | 3) | Bits | |
| Offic | 1 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 408 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 792 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 2024 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 3960 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 3624 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 7128 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 3968 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 7920 | 1320 |
| | 11 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 4352 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 8712 | 1452 |
| | 12 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 4736 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 9504 | 1584 |
| | 13 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 5120 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 10296 | 1716 |
| | 15 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 6016 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 11880 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 7168 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 14256 | 2376 |
| | 19 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 7552 | 24 | 1 | | 15048 | 2508 |
| | 24 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 9480 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 19008 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 9992 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 19800 | 3300 |
| | 26 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 10504 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 20592 | 3432 |
| | 31 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 12296 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 24552 | 4092 |
| | 33 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 13064 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 26136 | 4356 |
| | 38 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 15112 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 30096 | 5016 |
| | 39 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 15624 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 30888 | 5148 |
| | 47 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 18960 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 37224 | 6204 |
| | 51 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 20496 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 40392 | 6732 |
| | 52 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 21000 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 41184 | 6864 |
| | 53 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 21000 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 41976 | 6996 |
| | 61 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 24567 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 48312 | 8052 |
| | 65 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 26120 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 51480 | 8580 |
| | 67 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 26632 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 53064 | 8844 |
| | 78 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 31240 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 61776 | 10296 |
| | 79 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 31752 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 62568 | 10428 |
| | 80 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 31752 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 63360 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 32264 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 64152 | 10692 |
| | 93 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 36896 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 73656 | 12276 |
| | 95 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 37896 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 75240 | 12540 |
| | 106 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 42016 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 83952 | 13992 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-1 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

A.2.2.9 CP-OFDM 256QAM

Table A.2.2.9-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM 256QAM

| Paramet | Allocat | DFT-s- OFDM | Modulati | MCS Index | Payloa | Transp | LDPC | Numb | Total | Total |
|---------|--------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|----------|--------------|-----------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| er | ed resourc | Symbo | on | (Note | d size | ort block | Base | er of code | numbe r of | modulat ed |
| | e | Is per | | 2) | | CRC | Graph | blocks | bits | symbols |
| | blocks | slot | | 2) | | CICO | | per | per | per slot |
| | (L _{CRB)} | (Note | | | | | | slot | slot | per siet |
| | (=okb) | 1) | | | | | | (Note | 0.01 | |
| | | -, | | | | | | 3) | | |
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 704 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 1056 | 132 |
| | 5 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 3496 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5280 | 660 |
| | 9 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 6272 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 9504 | 1188 |
| | 10 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 7040 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 10560 | 1320 |
| | 11 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 7680 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 11616 | 1452 |
| | 12 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 8456 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 12672 | 1584 |
| | 13 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 9224 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 13728 | 1716 |
| | 15 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 10504 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 15840 | 1980 |
| | 18 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 12552 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 19008 | 2376 |
| | 19 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 13320 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 20064 | 2508 |
| | 24 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 16896 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 25344 | 3168 |
| | 25 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 17424 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 26400 | 3300 |
| | 26 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 18432 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 27456 | 3432 |
| | 31 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 22032 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 32736 | 4092 |
| | 33 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 23040 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 34848 | 4356 |
| | 38 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 26632 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 40128 | 5016 |
| | 39 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 27656 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 41184 | 5148 |
| | 47 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 32776 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 49632 | 6204 |
| | 51 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 35856 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 53856 | 6732 |
| | 52 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 36896 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 54912 | 6864 |
| | 53 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 36896 | 24 | 1 | 5 | 55968 | 6996 |
| | 61 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 43032 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 64416 | 8052 |
| | 65 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 46104 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 68640 | 8580 |
| | 67 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 47112 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 70752 | 8844 |
| | 78 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 55304 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 82368 | 10296 |
| | 79 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 55304 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 83424 | 10428 |
| | 80 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 56368 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 84480 | 10560 |
| | 81 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 57376 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 85536 | 10692 |
| | 93 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 65576 | 24 | 1 | 8 | 98208 | 12276 |
| | 95 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 67584 | 24 | 1 | 8 | 100320 | 12540 |
| | 106 | 11 | 256QAM | 20 | 73776 | 24 | 1 | 9 | 111936 | 13992 |
| NOTE 1: | DI ISCH me | onning Typ | a-A and sing | lo ovmbol | DM DC oc | nfiguration | Type 1 wi | th 2 addition | and DM D | C |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-2 defined in TS 38.214 [14].

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.3 Reference measurement channels for FR2-NTN FDD

A.2.3.1 DFT-s-OFDM Pi/2-BPSK

Table A.2.3.1-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM pi/2-BPSK

| Paramet | Allocat | DFT-s- | Modulati | MCS | Payloa | Transp | LDPC | Numb | Total | Total |
|---------|---------|--------|----------|-------|--------|--------|-------|--------|-------|---------|
| er | ed | OFDM | on | Index | d size | ort | Base | er of | numbe | modulat |
| | resourc | Symbo | | (Note | | block | Graph | code | r of | ed |
| | е | ls per | | 2) | | CRC | - | blocks | bits | |

| | blocks (L _{CRB)} | slot (Note 1) | | | | | | per slot (Note 3) | per slot | symbols per slot |
|------|------------------------------|---------------------|--------------|---|------|------|---|----------------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits9 | |
| | 1 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 24 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 132 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 504 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 2112 | 2112 |
| | 32 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1032 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4224 | 4224 |
| | 60 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 1864 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 7920 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 2024 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 8448 |
| | 120 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 3752 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 15840 | 15840 |
| | 128 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 3976 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 16896 | 16896 |
| | 144 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 4488 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 19008 | 19008 |
| | 243 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 7560 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 32076 | 32076 |
| | 256 | 11 | pi/2 BPSK | 0 | 7944 | 24 | 2 | 3 | 33792 | 33792 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each

Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.3.2 DFT-s-OFDM QPSK

Table A.2.3.2-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM QPSK

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 48 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 264 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 808 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4224 | 2112 |
| | 20 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1032 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 5280 | 2640 |
| | 32 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1608 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 4224 |
| | 60 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 2976 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 15840 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3240 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 16896 | 8448 |
| | 120 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 5896 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 31680 | 15840 |
| | 128 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 6408 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 33792 | 16896 |
| | 144 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 7176 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 38016 | 19008 |
| | 243 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 12040 | 24 | 2 | 4 | 64152 | 32076 |
| | 256 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 12808 | 24 | 2 | 4 | 67584 | 33792 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each

Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where LCRB ≤ NRB.

A.2.3.3 DFT-s-OFDM 16QAM

Table A.2.3.3-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM 16QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 176 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 528 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 2792 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 2112 |
| | 32 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 5632 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 16896 | 4224 |
| | 60 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 10504 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 31680 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 11272 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 33792 | 8448 |
| | 120 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 21000 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 63360 | 15840 |
| | 128 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 22536 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 67584 | 16896 |
| | 144 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 25104 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 76032 | 19008 |
| | 243 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 43032 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 128304 | 32076 |
| | 256 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 45096 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 135168 | 33792 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each

Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.3.4 DFT-s-OFDM 64QAM

Table A.2.3.4-1: Reference Channels for DFT-s-OFDM 64QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (L _{CRB)} | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numbe r of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbol s per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 408 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 792 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 6400 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 12672 | 2112 |
| | 32 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 12808 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 25344 | 4224 |
| | 60 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 24072 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 47520 | 7920 |
| | 64 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 25608 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 50688 | 8448 |
| | 120 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 48168 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 95040 | 15840 |
| | 128 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 51216 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 101376 | 16896 |
| | 144 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 57376 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 114048 | 19008 |
| | 243 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 96264 | 24 | 1 | 12 | 192456 | 32076 |
| | 256 | 11 | 64QAM | 18 | 102416 | 24 | 1 | 13 | 202752 | 33792 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 6.1.4.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

A.2.3.5 CP-OFDM QPSK

Table A.2.3.5-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM QPSK

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 48 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 264 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 808 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 4224 | 2112 |
| | 32 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1608 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 4224 |
| | 33 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 1672 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8712 | 4356 |
| | 62 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3104 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 16368 | 8184 |
| | 66 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 3368 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 17424 | 8712 |
| | 124 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 6152 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 32736 | 16368 |
| | 132 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 6536 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 34848 | 17424 |
| | 148 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 7304 | 24 | 2 | 2 | 39072 | 19536 |
| | 248 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 12296 | 24 | 2 | 4 | 65472 | 32736 |
| | 264 | 11 | QPSK | 2 | 13064 | 24 | 2 | 4 | 69696 | 34848 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each

Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.3.6 CP-OFDM 16QAM

Table A.2.3.6-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM 16QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|------------------------------------|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 176 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 528 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 2792 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 8448 | 2112 |
| | 32 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 5632 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 16896 | 4224 |
| | 33 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 5760 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 17424 | 4356 |
| | 62 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 10760 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 32736 | 8184 |
| | 66 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 11528 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 34848 | 8712 |
| | 124 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 21504 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 65472 | 16368 |
| | 132 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 23040 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 69696 | 17424 |
| | 148 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 26120 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 78144 | 19536 |
| | 248 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 43032 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 130944 | 32736 |
| | 264 | 11 | 16QAM | 10 | 46104 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 139392 | 34848 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where L_{CRB} ≤ N_{RB}.

A.2.3.7 CP-OFDM 64QAM

Table A.2.3.7-1: Reference Channels for CP-OFDM 64QAM

| Paramet er | Allocat ed resourc e blocks (LCRB) | DFT-s- OFDM Symbo Is per slot (Note 1) | Modulati on | MCS Index (Note 2) | Payloa d size | Transp ort block CRC | LDPC Base Graph | Numb er of code blocks per slot (Note 3) | Total numbe r of bits per slot | Total modulat ed symbols per slot |
|---------------|---|--|----------------|-----------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|
| Unit | | | | | Bits | Bits | | | Bits | |
| | 1 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 408 | 16 | 2 | 1 | 792 | 132 |
| | 16 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 6400 | 24 | 1 | 1 | 12672 | 2112 |
| | 32 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 12808 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 25344 | 4224 |
| | 33 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 13064 | 24 | 1 | 2 | 26136 | 4356 |
| | 62 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 24576 | 24 | 1 | 3 | 49104 | 8184 |
| | 66 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 26120 | 24 | 1 | 4 | 52272 | 8712 |
| | 124 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 49176 | 24 | 1 | 6 | 98208 | 16368 |
| | 132 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 53288 | 24 | 1 | 7 | 104544 | 17424 |
| | 148 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 59432 | 24 | 1 | 8 | 117216 | 19536 |
| | 248 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 98376 | 24 | 1 | 12 | 196416 | 32736 |
| | 264 | 11 | 64QAM | 19 | 106576 | 24 | 1 | 13 | 209088 | 34848 |

NOTE 1: PUSCH mapping Type-A and single-symbol DM-RS configuration Type-1 with 2 additional DM-RS symbols, such that the DM-RS positions are set to symbols 2, 7, 11. DMRS is [TDM'ed] with PUSCH data. DM-RS symbols are not counted.

NOTE 2: MCS Index is based on MCS table 5.1.3.1-1 defined in 38.214.

NOTE 3: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit)

NOTE 4: The RMCs apply to all channel bandwidth where LCRB ≤ NRB.

A.3 DL reference measurement channels

A.3.1 General

The transport block size (TBS) determination procedure is described in sub-clause 5.1.3.2 of TS 38.214 [12].

Unless otherwise stated, no user data is scheduled on slot #0 within 20 ms in order to avoid SSB and PDSCH transmissions in one slot and simplify test configuration.

A.3.2 Reference measurement channels for PDSCH performance requirements

For PDSCH reference channels if more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L=24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L=0 Bit).

A.3.2.1 FDD

Reference measurement channels for SCS 15 kHz FR1 A.3.2.1.1

Table A.3.2.1.1-1: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (QPSK)

| Parameter | Unit | | Value | | | | |
|--|--------|------------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Deference channel | | R.PDSCH.1- | | | | | |
| Reference channel | | 1.1 FDD | | | | | |
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 10 | | | | | |
| Subcarrier spacing | kHz | 15 | | | | | |
| Number of allocated | DDD- | 50 | | | | | |
| resource blocks | PRBs | 52 | | | | | |
| Number of consecutive | | 12 | | | | | |
| PDSCH symbols | | 12 | | | | | |
| Allocated slots per 2 | Slots | 19 | | | | | |
| frames | 31015 | - | | | | | |
| MCS table | | 64QAM | | | | | |
| MCS index | | 4 | | | | | |
| Modulation | | QPSK | | | | | |
| Target Coding Rate | | 0.30 | | | | | |
| Number of MIMO layers | | 1 | | | | | |
| Number of DMRS REs | | 12 | | | | | |
| Overhead for TBS | | 0 | | | | | |
| determination | | U | | | | | |
| Information Bit Payload | | | | | | | |
| per Slot | | | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 19 | Bits | 4096 | | | | | |
| Transport block CRC per | | | | | | | |
| Slot | | | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 19 | Bits | 24 | | | | | |
| Number of Code Blocks | | | | | | | |
| per Slot | | | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | CBs | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 19 | CBs | 1 | | | | | |
| Binary Channel Bits Per | | | | | | | |
| Slot | | | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = 10, 11 | Bits | 13104 | | | | | |
| For Slots i =1,, 9, 12, | Bits | 13728 | | | | | |
| , 19 | 1 2.10 | 10,20 | | | | | |
| Max. Throughput | Mbps | 3.891 | | | | | |
| averaged over 2 frames | - | | | | | | |
| Note 1: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot #0 with periodicity 20 ms | | | | | | | |

Note 2: Slot i is slot index per 2 frames

Table A.3.2.1.1-2: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (16QAM)

| Parameter | Unit | | | Value | | | |
|------------------------------|--|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|----|---|---|
| Reference | | R.PDSCH.1- | | | | | |
| channel | | 2.1 FDD | | | | | |
| Channel | MHz | 10 | | | | | |
| bandwidth | | | | | | | |
| Subcarrier spacing | kHz | 15 | | | | | |
| Number of | PRBs | 52 | | | | | |
| allocated | | | | | | | |
| resource | | | | | | | |
| blocks | | 4.0 | | | | | |
| Number of | | 12 | | | | | |
| consecutive PDSCH | | | | | | | |
| symbols | | | | | | | |
| Allocated | Slots | 19 | | | | | |
| slots per 2 | | | | | | | |
| frames | | | | | | | |
| MCS table | | 64QAM | | | | | |
| MCS index | | 13 | | | | | |
| Modulation | | 16QAM | | | | | |
| Target Coding Rate | | 0.48 | | | | | |
| Number of | | 1 | | | | | |
| MIMO layers | | | | | | | |
| Number of DMRS REs | | 12 | | | | | |
| Overhead for | | 0 | | | | | |
| TBS | | | | | | | |
| determination | | | | | | | |
| Information | | | | | | | |
| Bit Payload | | | | | | | |
| per Slot | D:: | N1/A | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 For Slots i = | Bits Bits | N/A 13064 | | | | | |
| 1,, 19 | DIIS | 13004 | | | | | |
| Transport | | | | | | | |
| block CRC | | | | | | | |
| per Slot | | | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 19 | Bits | 24 | | | | | |
| Number of | | | | | | | |
| Code Blocks | | | | | | | |
| per Slot | 0.0 | N1/A | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | CBs | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 19 | CBs | 2 | | | | | |
| Binary | | | | | | | |
| Channel Bits | 1 | | | | | | |
| Per Slot | | | | | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | | | | | |
| For Slots i = | Bits | 26208 | | | | | |
| 10, 11 | | | | | | | |
| For Slots i = | Bits | 27456 | | | | | |
| 1,, 9, 12, | 1 | | | | | | |
| , 19 | Mess | 10 444 | | | | | |
| Max. Throughput | Mbps | 12.411 | | | | | |
| averaged over | 1 | | | | | | |
| 2 frames | 1 | | | | | | |
| | BCH blo | ck is transmitted | d in slot #0 with | periodicity 20 r | ns | 1 | 1 |

NOTE 1: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot #0 with periodicity 20 ms NOTE 2: Slot i is slot index per 2 frames

A.3.2.1.2 Reference measurement channels for SCS 60 kHz FR2-NTN

Table A.3.2.1.2-1: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (QPSK)

| Parameter | Unit | | Value | |
|--|------|--------|--------|--------|
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 |
| Subcarrier spacing configuration μ | | 2 | 2 | 2 |
| Allocated resource blocks | | 66 | 132 | 264 |
| Subcarriers per resource block | | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| Allocated slots per Frame (NOTE 7) | | 23/24 | 23/24 | 23/24 |
| MCS index | | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| Modulation | | QPSK | QPSK | QPSK |
| Target Coding Rate | | 1/3 | 1/3 | 1/3 |
| Maximum number of HARQ transmissions | | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Information Bit Payload per Slot | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {3,4} for i from {0,,79} (NOTE 5) | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ (NOTE 6) | Bits | 4224 | 8456 | 16896 |
| Transport block CRC | Bits | 24 | 24 | 24 |
| LDPC base graph | | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Number of Code Blocks per Slot | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {3,4} for i from {0,,79} (NOTE 5) | CBs | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ (NOTE 6) | CBs | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| Binary Channel Bits Per Slot | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,79\}$ (NOTE 5) | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ (NOTE 6) | Bits | 14256 | 28512 | 57024 |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 1 frame (NOTE 8) | Mbps | 10.138 | 20.294 | 40.550 |

- NOTE 1: Additional parameters are specified in Table A.3.1-1 and Table A.3.3.1-1.
- NOTE 2: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit).
- NOTE 3: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot 0 with periodicity 20 ms.
- NOTE 4: Slot i is slot index per 2 frames.
- NOTE 5: When this DL RMC used together with the UL RMC for the transmitter requirements requiring at least one sub frame (1ms) for the measurement period, Slot i, if mod(i, 8) = {3,4,5,6,7} for i from {0,...,79}.
- NOTE 6: When this DL RMC used together with the UL RMC for the transmitter requirements requiring at least one sub frame (1ms) for the measurement period, Slot i, if mod(i, 8) = {0,1,2} for i from {0,...,79}.
- NOTE 7: First number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the first frame of the RMC; second number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the second frame of the RMC.
- NOTE 8: Throughput is averaged over 2nd frame of RMC.

Table A.3.2.1.2-2: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (16QAM)

| Parameter | Unit | Value | | | |
|---|------|--------|--------|---------|--|
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | |
| Subcarrier spacing configuration μ | | 2 | 2 | 2 | |
| Allocated resource blocks | | 66 | 132 | 264 | |
| Subcarriers per resource block | | 12 | 12 | 12 | |
| Allocated slots per Frame (NOTE 6) | | 23/24 | 23/24 | 23/24 | |
| MCS index | | 13 | 13 | 13 | |
| Modulation | | 16QAM | 16QAM | 16QAM | |
| Target Coding Rate | | 0.48 | 0.48 | 0.48 | |
| Maximum number of HARQ transmissions | | 1 | 1 | 1 | |
| Information Bit Payload per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,79\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | Bits | 12808 | 25608 | 51216 | |
| Transport block CRC | Bits | 24 | 24 | 24 | |
| LDPC base graph | | 1 | 1 | 1 | |
| Number of Code Blocks per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 10) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | CBs | N/A | N/A | N/A | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | CBs | 2 | 4 | 7 | |
| Binary Channel Bits Per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,79\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | Bits | 27324 | 54648 | 109296 | |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 1 frame (NOTE 7) | Mbps | 30.739 | 61.459 | 122.918 | |

- NOTE 1: Additional parameters are specified in Table A.3.1-1 and Table A.3.3.1-1.
- NOTE 2: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit).
- NOTE 3: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot 0 with periodicity 20 ms.
- NOTE 4: Slot i is slot index per 2 frames.
- NOTE 5: PTRS is configured on symbols containing PDSCH with 1 port, per 2PRB in frequency domain, per symbol in time domain. Overhead for TBS calculation is assumed to be 6.
- NOTE 6: First number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the first frame of the RMC; second number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the second frame of the RMC.
- NOTE 7: Throughput is averaged over 2nd frame of RMC.

Table A.3.2.1.2-3: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (64QAM)

| Parameter | Unit | | Value | | |
|---|------|--------|--------|---------|--|
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | |
| Subcarrier spacing configuration μ | | 2 | 2 | 2 | |
| Allocated resource blocks | | 66 | 132 | 264 | |
| Subcarriers per resource block | | 12 | 12 | 12 | |
| Allocated slots per Frame (NOTE 6) | | 23/24 | 23/24 | 23/24 | |
| MCS index | | 19 | 19 | 19 | |
| Modulation | | 64QAM | 64QAM | 64QAM | |
| Target Coding Rate | | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | |
| Maximum number of HARQ transmissions | | 1 | 1 | 1 | |
| Information Bit Payload per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,79\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | Bits | 20496 | 40976 | 81976 | |
| Transport block CRC | Bits | 24 | 24 | 24 | |
| LDPC base graph | | 1 | 1 | 1 | |
| Number of Code Blocks per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 10) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | CBs | N/A | N/A | N/A | |
| $\{1,,79\}$ For Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = $\{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | CBs | 3 | 5 | 10 | |
| Binary Channel Bits Per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,79\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,79\}$ | Bits | 40986 | 81972 | 163944 | |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 1 frame (NOTE 7) | Mbps | 49.190 | 98.342 | 196.742 | |

- NOTE 1: Additional parameters are specified in Table A.3.1-1 and Table A.3.3.1-1.
- NOTE 2: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit).
- NOTE 3: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot 0 with periodicity 20 ms.
- NOTE 4: Slot i is slot index per 2 frames.
- NOTE 5: PTRS is configured on symbols containing PDSCH with 1 port, per 2PRB in frequency domain, per symbol in time domain. Overhead for TBS calculation is assumed to be 6.
- NOTE 6: First number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the first frame of the RMC; second number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the second frame of the RMC.
- NOTE 7: Throughput is averaged over 2nd frame of RMC.

A.3.2.1.3 Reference measurement channels for SCS 120 kHz FR2-NTN

Table A.3.2.1.3-1: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (QPSK)

| Parameter | Unit | | Va | lue | |
|---|------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| Subcarrier spacing configuration μ | | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| Allocated resource blocks | | 32 | 66 | 132 | 264 |
| Subcarriers per resource block | | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| Allocated slots per Frame (NOTE 7) | | 47/48 | 47/48 | 47/48 | 47/48 |
| MCS index | | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| Modulation | | QPSK | QPSK | QPSK | QPSK |
| Target Coding Rate | | 1/3 | 1/3 | 1/3 | 1/3 |
| Maximum number of HARQ transmissions | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Information Bit Payload per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {3,4} for i from {0,,159} (NOTE 5) | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ (NOTE 6) | Bits | 2088 | 4224 | 8456 | 16896 |
| Transport block CRC | Bits | 16 | 24 | 24 | 24 |
| LDPC base graph | | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Number of Code Blocks per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {3,4} for i from {0,,159} (NOTE 5) | CBs | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ (NOTE 6) | CBs | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| Binary Channel Bits Per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {3,4} for i from {0,,159} (NOTE 5) | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {0,1,2} for i from {1,,159} (NOTE 6) | Bits | 6912 | 14256 | 28512 | 57024 |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 1 frame (NOTE 8) | Mbps | 10.022 | 20.275 | 40.589 | 81.101 |

- NOTE 1: Additional parameters are specified in Table A.3.1-1 and Table A.3.3.1-1.
- NOTE 2: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L=24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L=0 Bit).
- NOTE 3: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot 0 with periodicity 20 ms.
- NOTE 4: Slot i is slot index per 2 frames.
- NOTE 5: When this DL RMC used together with the UL RMC for the transmitter requirements requiring at least one sub frame (1ms) for the measurement period, Slot i, if $mod(i, 16) = \{7,...,15\}$ for i from $\{0,...,159\}$.
- NOTE 6: When this DL RMC used together with the UL RMC for the transmitter requirements requiring at least one sub frame (1ms) for the measurement period, Slot i, if mod(i, 16) = {0,...,6} for i from {0,...,159}.
- NOTE 7: First number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the first frame of the RMC; second number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the second frame of the RMC.
- NOTE 8: Throughput is averaged over 2nd frame of RMC.

Table A.3.2.1.3-2: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (16QAM)

| Parameter | Unit | Value | | | |
|--|------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| Subcarrier spacing configuration μ | | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| Allocated resource blocks | | 32 | 66 | 132 | 264 |
| Subcarriers per resource block | | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| Allocated slots per Frame (NOTE 6) | | 47/48 | 47/48 | 47/48 | 47/48 |
| MCS index | | 13 | 13 | 13 | 13 |
| Modulation | | 16QAM | 16QAM | 16QAM | 16QAM |
| Target Coding Rate | | 0.48 | 0.48 | 0.48 | 0.48 |
| Maximum number of HARQ transmissions | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Information Bit Payload per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,159\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ | Bits | 6272 | 12808 | 25608 | 51216 |
| Transport block CRC | Bits | 24 | 24 | 24 | 24 |
| LDPC base graph | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Number of Code Blocks per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,159\}$ | CBs | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ | CBs | 1 | 2 | 4 | 7 |
| Binary Channel Bits Per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if mod(i, 5) = {3,4} for i from {0,,159} | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ | Bits | 13248 | 27324 | 54648 | 109296 |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 1 frame (NOTE 7) | Mbps | 30.106 | 61.478 | 122.918 | 245.837 |

- NOTE 1: Additional parameters are specified in Table A.3.1-1 and Table A.3.3.1-1.
- NOTE 2: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L=24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L=0 Bit).
- NOTE 3: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot 0 of each frame.
- NOTE 4: Slot i is slot index per frame.
- NOTE 5: PTRS is configured on symbols containing PDSCH with 1 port, per 2PRB in frequency domain, per symbol in time domain. Overhead for TBS calculation is assumed to be 6.
- NOTE 6: First number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the first frame of the RMC; second number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the second frame of the RMC.
- NOTE 7: Throughput is averaged over 2nd frame of RMC.

Table A.3.2.1.3-3: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (QPSK)

| MHz kHz PRBs | R.PDSCH.3- 3.1 FDD 200 120 132 | | Value | | |
|--------------------|--|-------------|-------|-------|---|
| kHz | 200 120 132 | | | | |
| kHz | 120 132 | | | | |
| | 132 | | | | |
| PRBs | | | | | |
| TINDS | 13 | | | | |
| | 13 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Slots | 159 | | | | |
| 0.0.0 | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| D:4a | NI/A | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| BITS | 11528 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Bits | N/A | | | | |
| Bits | 24 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| CBs | 2 | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | |
| Bits | | | | | |
| Bits | 38016 | | | | |
| Mbps | 91.648 | | | | |
| | CBs CBs Bits Bits Bits Mbps | Slots 159 | Slots | Slots | Slots 159 64QAM 4 QPSK 0.30 1 12 0 Bits N/A Bits 11528 Bits N/A Bits 24 CBs N/A CBs 2 Bits N/A Bits 36432 Bits 38016 Mbps 91.648 |

SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot #0 with periodicity 20 ms Slot i is slot index per 2 frames Note 1:

Note 2:

Table A.3.2.1.3-4: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (16QAM)

| Parameter | Unit | | Value |
|--|--------|------------|-------|
| Reference channel | | R.PDSCH.3- | |
| | | 4.1 FDD | |
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 200 | |
| Subcarrier spacing | kHz | 120 | |
| Number of allocated | PRBs | 132 | |
| resource blocks | I IVD3 | | |
| Number of consecutive | | 13 | |
| PDSCH symbols | | | |
| Allocated slots per 2 | Slots | 159 | |
| frames | 0.0.0 | | |
| MCS table | | 64QAM | |
| MCS index | | 13 | |
| Modulation | | 16QAM | |
| Target Coding Rate | | 0.48 | |
| Number of MIMO layers | | 1 | |
| Number of DMRS REs | | 12 | |
| Overhead for TBS | | 0 | |
| determination | | | |
| Information Bit Payload | | | |
| per Slot | D:4- | NI/A | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 159 | Bits | 36896 | |
| Transport block CRC per Slot | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 159 | Bits | 24 | |
| Number of Code Blocks | | | |
| per Slot | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | CBs | N/A | |
| For Slots i = 1,, 159 | CBs | 5 | |
| Binary Channel Bits Per | | | |
| Slot | | | |
| For Slot i = 0 | Bits | N/A | |
| For Slots i = 80, 81 | Bits | 72864 | |
| For Slots i =1,, 79, 82,, 159 | Bits | 76032 | |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 2 frames | Mbps | 293.323 | |

SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot #0 with periodicity 20 ms Slot i is slot index per 2 frames Note 1:

Note 2:

Table A.3.2.1.3-5: PDSCH Reference Channel for FDD (64QAM)

| Parameter | Unit | | Va | lue | |
|--|------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| Channel bandwidth | MHz | 50 | 100 | 200 | 400 |
| Subcarrier spacing configuration μ | | 3 | 3 | 3 | 3 |
| Allocated resource blocks | | 32 | 66 | 132 | 264 |
| Subcarriers per resource block | | 12 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| Allocated slots per Frame (NOTE 6) | | 47/48 | 47/48 | 47/48 | 47/48 |
| MCS index | | 19 | 19 | 19 | 19 |
| Modulation | | 64QAM | 64QAM | 64QAM | 64QAM |
| Target Coding Rate | | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 |
| Maximum number of HARQ transmissions | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Information Bit Payload per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,159\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ | Bits | 9992 | 20496 | 40976 | 81976 |
| Transport block CRC | Bits | 24 | 24 | 24 | 24 |
| LDPC base graph | | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Number of Code Blocks per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,159\}$ | CBs | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ | CBs | 2 | 3 | 5 | 10 |
| Binary Channel Bits Per Slot | | | | | |
| For Slots 0 and Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{3,4\}$ for i from $\{0,,159\}$ | Bits | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| For Slot i, if $mod(i, 5) = \{0,1,2\}$ for i from $\{1,,159\}$ | Bits | 19872 | 40986 | 81972 | 163944 |
| Max. Throughput averaged over 1 frame (NOTE 7) | Mbps | 47.962 | 98.381 | 196.685 | 393.485 |

- NOTE 1: Additional parameters are specified in Table A.3.1-1 and Table A.3.3.1-1.
- NOTE 2: If more than one Code Block is present, an additional CRC sequence of L = 24 Bits is attached to each Code Block (otherwise L = 0 Bit).
- NOTE 3: SS/PBCH block is transmitted in slot 0 of each frame.
- NOTE 4: Slot i is slot index per frame.
- NOTE 5: PTRS is configured on symbols containing PDSCH with 1 port, per 2PRB in frequency domain, per symbol in time domain. Overhead for TBS calculation is assumed to be 6.
- NOTE 6: First number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the first frame of the RMC; second number corresponds to the number slots allocated in the second frame of the RMC.
- NOTE 7: Throughput is averaged over 2nd frame of RMC.

A.3.3 Reference measurement channels for PDCCH performance requirements

A.3.3.1 FDD

A.3.3.1.1 Reference measurement channels for SCS 120 kHz FR2-NTN

Parameter Unit Value R.PDCCH.1-R.PDCCH.1-Reference channel 1.1 FDD 1.2 FDD 120 120 Subcarrier kHz spacing CORESET 132 132 frequency domain allocation 1 2 **CORESET** time domain allocation Aggregation level 8 16 **DCI** Format 1 0

42

56

Bits

Table A.3.3.1.1-1: PDCCH Reference Channels

A.4 Testing related to Satellite Access

Payload (without

CRC)

A.4.1 General

The following test conditions should be maintained for Satellite Access when test equipment emulates the snapshot of the satellite link channel.

- The same ephemeris info will be maintained during each test.
- A set of ephemeris information are pre-defined for each satellite corresponding to respective epoch times in TS 38.508-1 [13].
- The range of the selected constant delay shift is as follows:
 - For NGSO an altitude of 600km and 1200km on a circular orbit are considered. The range of the one-way delay between UE and satellite is from 2ms (lowest value for LEO orbit 600km) to 6.67ms (highest value for LEO orbit 1200km).
 - For GSO the range of the one-way delay from UE to satellite is within 119.375ms to 128.79ms.
- Constant delay value is derived from ephemeris info (SIB19) and UE location associated to zero Doppler or non-zero Doppler value under test.

A.4.2 Test condition for transmitter characteristics

All requriements in section 6 for transmitter characteristics, other than frequency error in clause 6.4.1, shall be verified when Doppler conditions are set to zero and delay conditions are set to constant for all types of satellites.

Frequency error requirement in clause 6.4.1 shall be verified for at least two cases: one with zero Doppler condition and the other with a constant Doppler shift where the range of the absolute value of Doppler is greater than zero and up to [0.93] ppm if the IE field *ntn-ScenarioSupport-r17* is present and indicated as GSO and up to 24 ppm if the IE field *ntn-ScenarioSupport-r17* is present and indicated as NGSO or only the IE field *nonTerrestrialNetwork-r17* is present. The delay condition is a constant.

A.4.3 Test condition for receiver characteristics

All requirements in section 7 for receiver characteristics shall be verified when Doppler conditions are set to zero and delay conditions are set to constant for all types of satellites.

A.4.4 Test condition for performance requirements

All requirements in section 8 for performance requirements shall be verified when Doppler conditions related to satellite motion for DL in service link are set to zero and delay conditions are set to constant for all types of NGSO satellites.

The one-way delay between UE and satellite for NGSO at an altitude of 600km is 2ms.

A.5 OFDMA Channel Noise Generator (OCNG)

A.5.1 OCNG Patterns for FDD

A.5.1.1 OCNG FDD pattern 1: Generic OCNG FDD Pattern for all unused REs

Table A.5.1.1-1: OP.1 FDD: Generic OCNG FDD Pattern for all unused REs

| OCNG Appliance OCNG Parameters | Control Region (Core Set) | Data Region |
|--|---|--|
| Resources allocated | All unused REs (Note 1) | All unused REs (Note 2) |
| Structure | PDCCH | PDSCH |
| Content | Uncorrelated pseudo random QPSK modulated data | Uncorrelated pseudo random QPSK modulated data |
| Transmission scheme for multiple antennas ports transmission | Single Tx port transmission | Spatial multiplexing using any precoding matrix with dimensions same as the precoding matrix for PDSCH |
| Subcarrier Spacing | Same as for RMC PDCCH in the active BWP | Same as for RMC PDSCH in the active BWP |
| Power Level | Same as for RMC PDCCH | Same as for RMC PDSCH |

NOTE 1: All unused REs in the active CORESETS appointed by the search spaces in use.

NOTE 2: Unused available REs refer to REs in PRBs not allocated for any physical channels, CORESETs, synchronization signals or reference signals in channel bandwidth.

Annex B (normative): Propagation conditions

B.1 Static propagation condition

B.1.1 UE Receiver with 1Rx

For 2 port transmission the channel matrix is defined in the frequency domain by

$$H = [1 \ 1].$$

B.1.2 UE Receiver with 2Rx

For 1 port transmission the channel matrix is defined in the frequency domain by

$$\mathbf{H} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For 2 port transmission the channel matrix is defined in the frequency domain by

$$\mathbf{H} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & j \\ 1 & -j \end{pmatrix}.$$

B.2 Multi-path fading propagation conditions

The multipath propagation conditions consist of several parts:

- A delay profile in the form of a "tapped delay-line", characterized by a number of taps at fixed positions on a sampling grid. The profile can be further characterized by the r.m.s. delay spread and the maximum delay spanned by the taps.
 - A combination of channel model parameters that include the Delay profile and the Doppler spectrum that is characterized by a classical spectrum shape and a maximum Doppler frequency.

Initial channel matrix for LOS component of NTN-TDL-C channel model is equal to channel matrix of Static propagation conditions in Clause B.1.

B.2.1 Delay profiles

The delay profiles are derived from the TR 38.811 [12] NTN-TDL models for the desired delay spread and tap resolution. After scaling the normalized delay spread values for each tap by the desired RMS delay spread, the tap delays are quantized to a delay resolution of 5ns by rounding to the nearest multiple of the delay resolution.

Table B.2.1-1: Delay profiles for NR NTN channel models

| Туре | Model | Delay spread (r.m.s.) | Delay resolution |
|------|-------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| NLOS | NTN-TDLA100 | 100 ns | 5 ns |
| LOS | NTN-TDLC5 | 5 ns | 5 ns |

Table B.2.1-2: NTN-TDLA100 (DS = 100 ns)

| Tap # | Delay [ns] | Power [dB] | Fading distribution |
|-------|------------|------------|---------------------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Rayleigh |
| 2 | 110 | -4.7 | Rayleigh |
| 3 | 285 | -6.5 | Rayleigh |

Table B.2.1-3 NTN-TDLC5 (DS = 5 ns)

| Tap# | Delay [ns] | Power [dB] | Fading distribution | |
|---------|---------------------------------------|------------|---------------------|--|
| 4 | 0 | -0.6 | LOS path | |
| ' | 0 | -8.9 | Rayleigh | |
| 2 | 60 | -21.5 | Rayleigh | |
| Note 1: | Tap #1 follows a Rician distribution. | | | |

B.2.2 Combinations of channel model parameters

The propagation conditions used for the performance measurements in multi-path fading environment are indicated as a combination of a channel model name and a maximum Doppler frequency, i.e., NTN-TDLA<DS>-<Doppler>, or NTN-TDLC<DS>-<Doppler> where '<DS>' indicates the desired delay spread and '<Doppler>' indicates the maximum Doppler frequency (Hz).

Table B.2.2-1 show the propagation conditions that are used for the performance measurements in multi-path fading environment for NLOS and LOS propagation conditions.

Table B.2.2-1: Channel model parameters for NTN

| Combination name | Model | Maximum Doppler frequency |
|------------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| NTN-TDLA100-200 | NTN-TDLA100 | 200 Hz |
| NTN-TDLC5-200 | NTN-TDLC5 | 200 Hz |
| NTN-TDLC5-1200 | NTN-TDLC5 | 1200Hz |

B.2.3 MIMO Channel Correlation Matrices

The MIMO channel correlation matrices defined in B.2.3 apply for the antenna configuration using uniform linear arrays at both gNB and UE.

B.2.3.1 MIMO Correlation Matrices using Uniform Linear Array (ULA)

The MIMO channel correlation matrices defined in B.2.3.1 apply for the antenna configuration using uniform linear array (ULA) at both gNB and UE.

B.2.3.1.1 Definition of MIMO Correlation Matrices

Table B.2.3.1.1-1 defines the correlation matrix for the gNB.

Table B.2.3.1.1-1: gNB correlation matrix

| | One antenna | Two antennas |
|-----------------|---------------|--|
| gNB Correlation | $R_{gNB} = 1$ | $R_{gNB} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \alpha \\ \alpha^* & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ |

Table B.2.3.1.1-2 defines the correlation matrix for the UE:

Table B.2.3.1.1-2: UE correlation matrix

| | One antenna | Two antennas |
|----------------|-------------|---|
| UE Correlation | R_{UE} =1 | $R_{UE} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \beta \\ \beta^* & 1 \end{pmatrix}$ |

Table B.2.3.1.1-3 defines the channel spatial correlation matrix R_{spat} . The parameters, α and β in Table B.2.3.1-3 defines the spatial correlation between the antennas at the gNB and UE.

Table B.2.3.1.1-3: $R_{\it spat}$ correlation matrices

| 1x2 case | $R_{spat} = R_{UE} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \beta \\ \beta^* & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ | | | | | | | | |
|----------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| 2x1 case | $R_{spat} = R_{gNB} = egin{bmatrix} 1 & lpha \ lpha^* & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ | | | | | | | | |
| 2x2 case | $R_{spat} = R_{gNB} \otimes R_{UE} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \alpha \\ \alpha^* & 1 \end{bmatrix} \otimes \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \beta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \beta & \alpha & \alpha\beta \\ \beta^* & 1 & \alpha\beta^* & \alpha \\ \alpha^* & \alpha^*\beta & 1 & \beta \\ \alpha^*\beta^* & \alpha^* & \beta^* & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ | | | | | | | | |

B.2.3.1.2 MIMO Correlation Matrices at High, Medium and Low Level

The α and β for different correlation types are given in Table B.2.3.1.2-1.

Table B.2.3.1.2-1: The α and β parameters for ULA MIMO correlation matrices

| Correlation Model | α | β |
|-------------------|---|---|
| Low correlation | 0 | 0 |

The correlation matrices low correlation are defined in Table B.2.3.1.2-2 below.

Table B.2.3.1.2-2: MIMO correlation matrices for low correlation

| 1x2 case | $R_{low} = \mathbf{I}_2$ |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2x1 case | $R_{low} = \mathbf{I}_2$ |
| 2x2 case | R_{low} = \mathbf{I}_4 |
| Note: Id is the dxd identity matrix. | |

Annex C (normative): Downlink physical channels

C.1 General

This annex specifies the downlink physical channels that are needed for setting a connection and channels that are needed during a connection.

C.2 Setup (Conducted)

Table C.2-1 describes the downlink Physical Channels that are required for connection set up.

Table C.2-1: Downlink Physical Channels required for connection set-up

| Physical Channel |
|------------------|
| PBCH |
| SSS |
| PSS |
| PDCCH |
| PDSCH |
| PBCH DMRS |
| PDCCH DMRS |
| PDSCH DMRS |
| CSI-RS |

C.3 Connection (Conducted)

The following clauses, describes the downlink Physical Channels that are transmitted during a connection i.e., when measurements are done.

C.3.1 Measurement of Performance requirements

Table C.3.1-1 is applicable for measurements in which uniform RS-to-EPRE boosting for all downlink physical channels, unless otherwise stated.

Table C.3.1-1: Downlink Physical Channels transmitted during a connection (FDD and TDD)

| Parameter | Unit | Value (Note 2) |
|---|---------|---|
| SSS transmit power | W | Test specific |
| EPRE ratio of PSS to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PBCH to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PBCH to PBCH DMRS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDCCH to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDCCH to PDCCH DMRS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDSCH to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDSCH to PDSCH DMRS | dB | Test specific (Note 1) |
| EPRE ratio of CSI-RS to SSS | dB | -10*log10(L) (Note 3) |
| EPRE ratio of OCNG to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDCCH OCNG to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of LTE CRS to NR SSS | dB | 0 (Note 4) |
| Note 1: Value is derived from Table 4.1 | 1 in TO | 2.29.214 [12] bacad on "Number of DM DS CDM |

- Note 1: Value is derived from Table 4.1-1 in TS 38.214 [12] based on "Number of DM-RS CDM
- groups without data" and "DMRS Type" parameters specified for each test.
- Note 2: The value is the energy of per RE for a single antenna port before pre-coding.
- Note 3: $L \in \{1,2,4,8\}$ is the CDM group size of NZP CSI-RS specified for each test.
- Note 4: It is only applicable to LTE-NR coexistence tests.

C.4 Setup (Radiated)

Table C.4-1 describes the downlink Physical Channels that are required for connection set up.

Table C.4-1: Downlink Physical Channels required for connection set-up

| Physical Channel |
|------------------|
| PBCH |
| SSS |
| PSS |
| PDCCH |
| PDSCH |
| PBCH DMRS |
| PDCCH DMRS |
| PDSCH DMRS |
| CSI-RS |
| PTRS |

C.5 Connection (Radiated)

The following clauses, describes the downlink Physical Channels that are transmitted during a connection i.e., when measurements are done.

C.5.1 Measurement of Receiver Characteristics

Table C.5.1-1 is applicable for measurements in which uniform RS-to-EPRE boosting for all downlink physical channels, unless otherwise stated.

Table C.5.1-1: Downlink Physical Channels transmitted during a connection (TDD)

| Parameter | Unit | Value (Note 2) |
|-----------------------------------|------|------------------------|
| SSS transmit power | W | Test specific |
| EPRE ratio of PSS to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PBCH to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PBCH to PBCH DMRS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDCCH to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDCCH to PDCCH DMRS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDSCH to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDSCH to PDSCH DMRS | dB | Test specific (Note 1) |
| EPRE ratio of CSI-RS to SSS | dB | -10*log10(L) (Note 3) |
| EPRE ratio of PTRS to PDSCH | dB | Test specific |
| EPRE ratio of OCNG to SSS | dB | 0 |
| EPRE ratio of PDCCH OCNG to SSS | dB | 0 |

- Note 1: Value is derived from Table 4.1-1 in TS 38.214 [12] based on "Number of DM-RS CDM groups without data" and "DMRS Type" parameters specified for each test.
- Note 2: The value is the energy of per RE for a single antenna port before pre-coding.
- Note 3: $L \in \{1,2,4,8\}$ is the CDM group size of NZP CSI-RS specified for each test.
- Note 4: Value is derived from Table 4.1-2 in TS 38.214 [12] based on "The number of PDSCH layers" and "epre-Ratio" parameters specified for each test.

Annex D (informative): Void

Annex E (normative): Environmental conditions

E.1 General

This annex specifies the environmental requirements of the UE. Within these limits the requirements of the present documents shall be fulfilled.

E.2 Environmental (Conducted)

The requirements in this clause apply to all types of UE(s).

E.2.1 Temperature

The UE shall fulfil all the requirements in the temperature range defined in Table E.2.1-1.

Table E.2.1-1: Temperature conditions

| | Temperature | Temperature conditions |
|---|----------------|--|
| + | -15°C to +35°C | For normal conditions (with relative humidity of 25 % to 75 %) |

Outside this temperature range the UE, if powered on, shall not make ineffective use of the radio frequency spectrum. In no case shall the UE exceed the transmitted levels as defined in clause 6.2 of TS 38.101-1 [6] for extreme operation.

E.2.2 Voltage

The UE shall fulfil all the requirements in the voltage range defined in Table E.2.2-1.

Table E.2.2-1: Voltage conditions

| Power source | Normal conditions voltage |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| AC mains | nominal |
| Regulated lead acid battery | 1,1 * nominal |
| Non regulated batteries: | |
| Leclanché | Nominal |
| Lithium | 1,1 * Nominal |
| Mercury/nickel & cadmium | Nominal |

Outside this voltage range the UE if powered on, shall not make ineffective use of the radio frequency spectrum. In no case shall the UE exceed the transmitted levels as defined in TS 38.101-1[6, Clause 6.2] for extreme operation. In particular, the UE shall inhibit all RF transmissions when the power supply voltage is below the manufacturer declared shutdown voltage.

E.2.3 Vibration

The UE shall fulfil all the requirements when vibrated at the following frequency/amplitudes.

Table E.2.3-1: Vibration conditions

| Frequency | ASD (Acceleration Spectral Density) random vibration |
|-----------------|---|
| 5 Hz to 20 Hz | $0.96 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}^3$ |
| 20 Hz to 500 Hz | 0,96 m ² /s ³ at 20 Hz, thereafter –3 dB/Octave |

Outside the specified frequency range the UE, if powered on, shall not make ineffective use of the radio frequency spectrum. In no case shall the UE exceed the transmitted levels as defined in TS 38.101-1[6] for extreme operation.

Annex F (informative): Antenna modelling for NTN VSAT

[To be updated]

Annex G (informative): Change history

| Change history | | | | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|------------|----|-----|-----|---|----------------|
| Date | Meeting | TDoc | CR | Rev | Cat | Subject/Comment | New version |
| 2022-01 | RAN4#10 1-bis-e | R4-2203086 | | | | Draft skeleton approved | 0.0.1 |
| 2022-03 | RAN4#10 2-e | R4-2207514 | | | | Added approved TPs in RAN4#102-e including: R4-2207332, R4-2207334, R4-2207343, R4-2207344, R4-2207391, R4-2207393, R4-2207394, R4-2207396, R4-2207400, R4-2207404, R4-2207405, R4-2207410, R4-2207411, R4-2207413, R4-2207415 | 0.1.0 |
| 2022-05 | RAN4#10 3-e | R4-2208641 | | | | Added approved TPs in RAN4#103-e including: R4-2208662, TP to TS 38.101-5 on Conducted transmitter characteristics R4-2209366, TP for 38.101-5 on Output RF spectrum emissions for satellite UE except for UE coexistence R4-2210851, Draft text proposal for Clause 3 - TS 38.101-5 R4-2210874, TP to TS 38.101-5 on 7.3 Reference Sensitivity R4-2210876, Updates to TS 38.101-5 related to n255 A-MPR clause R4-2210877, TP for 38.101-5 on Spurious emissions for UE coexistence R4-2210878, TP to update TS 38.101-5 clause 7.6.3 on OOBB R4-2211220, TP for 38.101-5 on frequency error | 0.2.0 |

| Change history | | | | | | | |
|----------------|----------|-----------|------|-----|-----|---|---------|
| Date | Meeting | TDoc | CR | Rev | Cat | Subject/Comment | New |
| | | | | | | | version |
| 2022-06 | RAN#96 | | | | | Approved by plenary – Rel-17 spec under change control | 17.0.0 |
| 2022-09 | RAN#97 | RP-222035 | 0001 | 1 | F | CR to 38.101-5: Corrections on Rx requirements for NTN UE | 17.1.0 |
| 2022-09 | RAN#97 | RP-222035 | 0002 | | F | CR to TS 38.101-5 - Tx requirements issues fixes | 17.1.0 |
| 2022-09 | RAN#97 | RP-222035 | 0003 | 1 | F | CR to TS 38.101-5 - Rx requirements issues fixes | 17.1.0 |
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223306 | 0005 | 1 | F | CR: 0005 Doppler test conditions for RF requirements 38.101-5 | 17.2.0 |
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223306 | 0006 | | F | CR to 38.101-5: Corrections on section 5.3.3 for NTN UE | 17.2.0 |
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223311 | 0010 | 2 | F | CR to 38.101-5 for NTN UE RF requirements corrections | 17.2.0 |
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223309 | 0012 | | F | CR addition of protection for n100 and n101 into 38.101-5 | 17.2.0 |
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223311 | 0013 | | F | CR to 38.101-5: Corrections on reference for NTN UE | 17.2.0 |
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223303 | 0015 | | В | Big CR for UE NTN performance requirements (TS38.101-5, Rel- | 17.2.0 |
| | | | | | | [17, CAT B] | |

| Date | Meeting | TDoc | CR | Rev | Cat | Subject/Comment | New version |
|---------|----------|-----------|------|----------|-----|---|----------------|
| 2022-12 | RAN#98-e | RP-223315 | 0009 | 1 | В | CR related to Introduction of LTE TDD Band in 1670 – 1675 MHz | 18.0.0 |
| 2023-03 | RAN#99 | RP-230535 | 0016 | | В | CR related to Introduction of NR TDD Band n54 | 18.1.0 |
| 2023-03 | RAN#99 | RP-230516 | 0018 | 1 | Α | Correction of the out-of-band blocking requirements | 18.1.0 |
| 2023-06 | RAN#100 | RP-231344 | 0026 | | Α | Correction to reference measurement channels for NTN | 18.2.0 |
| 2023-09 | RAN#101 | RP-232494 | 0028 | | Α | CR to TS38.101-5: Corrections to NR-NTN requirements (Rel-18) | 18.3.0 |
| 2023-09 | RAN#101 | RP-232494 | 0031 | | Α | [NR_NTN_solutions-Core] CR to 38.101-5 corrections A-MPR | 18.3.0 |
| | | | | | | requirement reference-r18 | |
| 2023-09 | RAN#101 | RP-232522 | 0033 | 1 | В | CR for TS 38.101-5 – Adding 30 MHz CBW for NTN UE | 18.3.0 |
| 2023-09 | RAN#101 | RP-232494 | 0035 | 1 | Α | Clarifications to 38.101-5 (Rel-18) | 18.3.0 |
| 2023-12 | RAN#102 | RP-233365 | 0039 | | В | Introduction of the enhanced channel raster to TS 38.101-5 | 18.4.0 |
| 2023-12 | RAN#102 | RP-233349 | 0042 | | Α | CR to 38.101-5 on clarification for NR NTN UE RF and Demod requirements test conditions | 18.4.0 |
| 2023-12 | RAN#102 | RP-233349 | 0044 | | Α | CR to 38.101-5: Correction on the reference measurement channel for NTN PDSCH requirement | 18.4.0 |
| 2023-12 | RAN#102 | RP-233349 | 0046 | | Α | [NR_NTN_solutions-Core] CR for 38.101-5 to align the understanding of GEO (R18) | 18.4.0 |
| 2023-12 | RAN#102 | RP-233349 | 0052 | | Α | Clarification for the Pi/2 BPSK modulation | 18.4.0 |
| 2023-12 | | RP-233366 | 0054 | 1 | В | Introduction of the NTN L/S-band | 18.4.0 |
| 2024-03 | | RP-240609 | 0055 | 1 | F | Correction of the A-MPR values for the satellite band n254 | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | | RP-240609 | 0057 | ' | F | Adding satellite band n254 to the list of bands with enhanced | 18.5.0 |
| | | | | | | channel raster (NR_NTN_solutions-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5 on NTN spurious | |
| 2024-03 | | RP-240569 | 0059 | | A | emission and reference sensitivity power level (R18_CAT_A) | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | | RP-240589 | 0060 | ļ | В | Big CR on TS38.101-5 for UE RF Requirements | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | | RP-240570 | 0064 | | Α | (NR_NTN_solutions-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5 to update NTN frequency range (R18) | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | RAN#103 | RP-240589 | 0068 | 1 | В | CR for 38.101-5 to introduce Phase continuity requirements for NTN UE DMRS bundling | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | RAN#103 | RP-240610 | 0070 | | F | CR to TS38.101-5: Addition of some missing bands in UE spurious emissions coexistence clause | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | RAN#103 | RP-240570 | 0074 | 4 | F | Correction on DSS support for the NTN bands from Rel-18 | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-03 | | RP-240552 | 0076 | | Α | UL RMCs updates for NR NTN (Rel-18) | 18.5.0 |
| 2024-06 | | RP-241386 | 0078 | 1 | F | Clarification for applicability of DSS for NTN FR1 bands | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | | RP-241489 | 0079 | | F | Clarification for the mandatory support of enhanced channel raster for the NTN bands | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | RAN#104 | RP-241387 | 0081 | | Α | (NR_NTN_solutions-Perf) CR to 38.101-5 to update section with PDSCH demod requirements | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | RAN#104 | RP-241386 | 0087 | | Α | (NR_NTN_solutions-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5: Corrections on REFSENS for band n256 | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | RAN#104 | RP-241429 | 0088 | | В | Big CR on NTN demodulation requirements (TS38.101-5, Rel-18) | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | | RP-241386 | 0092 | | A | (NR_NTN_solutions-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5 on UE additional | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | | RP-241386 | 0094 | | Α | maximum output power reduction (R18_CAT_A) CR to TS 38.101-5: Terminology alignment with SAN RF | 18.6.0 |
| | | | | | | specification | |
| 2024-06 | | RP-241429 | 0098 | 1 | В | Big CR to TS 38.101-5 | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-06 | | RP-241585 | 0099 | | В | CR to TS 38.101-5 - Adding clause 10.5 ACS requirements for NTN VSAT UE | 18.6.0 |
| 2024-09 | | RP-242179 | 0100 | 1 | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Perf) CR on performance requirements for 38.101-5 | |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242177 | 0101 | | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core)CR for TS 38.101-5, Correction on ACS requirment for mobile VSAT and fixed VSAT | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242180 | 0102 | | F | (NR_NTN_LSband-Core) Correction of NS_05N in band n254 | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | | RP-242177 | 0103 | | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core) CR to TS 38.101-5: clarification of the additional requirements for n512 + additional fixes | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242179 | 0106 | | F | CR to 38.101-5 on eNTN demod requirements for PDCCH | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | | RP-242177 | 0107 | | F | CR on log formula for FR2-NTN UE RF requirement | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | | RP-242179 | 0107 | 1 | F | CR to 38.101-5: Correction on UE demodulation requirement for | 18.7.0 |
| | | | | <u> </u> | | NTN FR2 | |
| 2024-09 | | RP-242177 | 0111 | | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core) CR to correct the definition of cross-polarized transmission - TS38.101-5 | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | | RP-242177 | 0112 | 1 | F | Maintenance CR for NTN VSAT in Ka-band | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242178 | 0116 | 1 | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5 to modify the mistakes for Tx requirements (R18) | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242178 | 0117 | 1 | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5 to modify the mistakes for Rx requirements (R18) | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242177 | 0119 | | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core) CR for TS 38.101-5 to clarify the applicability for different requirements (R18) | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-09 | RAN#105 | RP-242181 | 0121 | | Α | (NR_NTN_solutions-Core) CR to TS 38.101-5: variable duplex distance | 18.7.0 |
| 2024-12 | RAN#106 | RP-243056 | 0125 | | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Core) Correction on Off-axis EIRP density and off- axis cross-polarization of NTN Ka band n510, n511 | 18.8.0 |
| 2024-12 | RAN#106 | RP-243059 | 0128 | | Α | (NR_NTN_solutions-Perf) CR on UE demodulation requirements | 18.8.0 |

| 2024-12 | RAN#106 | RP-243057 | 0129 | 1 | F | (NR_NTN_enh-Perf) CR on UE demodulation requirements | 18.8.0 |
|---------|---------|-----------|------|---|---|---|--------|
| 2024-12 | RAN#106 | RP-243057 | 0134 | 1 | F | CR to 38101-5 Correction on UE demodulation requirement for NTN | 18.8.0 |
| | | | | | | NIN | |
| 2024-12 | RAN#106 | RP-243056 | 0141 | 2 | F | Corrections to VSAT UE Mandatory instead of Additional | 18.8.0 |
| | | | | | | Requirements | |
| 2024-12 | RAN#106 | RP-243058 | 0142 | | F | CR for Rel-18 to correct the indications of requirements for NS_04N | 18.8.0 |
| | | | | | | and NS_05N | |

History

| Document history | | | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|--|--|--|--|
| V18.5.0 | May 2024 | Publication | | | | |
| V18.6.0 | August 2024 | Publication | | | | |
| V18.7.0 | October 2024 | Publication | | | | |
| V18.8.0 | January 2025 | Publication | | | | |
| | | | | | | |